## ALGORITMY A DATOVÉ STRUKTURY II

Ivana Černá<br>Jaro 2019

Fakulta informatiky MU

## George Pólya: How to Solve It?

## What is the difference between method and device? <br> A method is a device which you used twice.

## Andrew Hamilton, rektor Oxford University, Respekt 7/2015

Je nutné mít na paměti, že my studenty nepřipravujeme na konkrétní povolání, ale trénujeme jejich mysl, aby byli co nejlépe připraveni na změny, jež nás nevyhnutelně čekají, a které budou nejspiš dosti dramatické.

## CONTENTS

1. Computational Complexity
1.1 Complexity of Problems and Algorithms
1.2 Amortized Complexity
2. Data Stuctures
2.1 Heaps
2.2 Disjoint-sets Data structures
3. Algorithm Design Techniques
3.1 Divide and Conquer
3.2 Dynamic Programming
3.3 Greedy Algorithms
4. Network Flow
5. String Matching

## ADMINISTRATIVE STUFF



## Interactive syllabi

https://is.muni.cz/auth/el/1433/jaro2019/IV003/index.qwarp
follow discussion groups in IS

## LITERATURE

recommended textbooks

- J. Kleinberg, E. Tardos: Algorithm Design. Addison-Wesley, 2006.
- T. Cormen, Ch. Leiserson, R. Rivest, C. Stein: Introduction to Algorithms. 3rd Edition. MIT Press, 2009.
- S. Dasgupta, Ch. Papadimitriou, U. Vazirani:Algorithms. McGraw Hill, 2007.
slides and demo
http://www.cs.princeton.edu/~wayne/kleinberg-tardos/


## Part I

## Algorithmic Complexity

## OVERVIEW

## Complexity of Problems and Algorithms

Algorithm Complexity Analysis
Recursive algorithms
Iterative algorithms

Amortized Complexity
Amortized analysis

## COMPLEXITY OF PROBLEMS

 AND ALGORITHMS
## A strikingly modern thought

" As soon as an Analytic Engine exists, it will necessarily guide the future course of the science. Whenever any result is sought by its aid, the question will arise - By what course of calculation can these results be arrived at by the machine in the shortest time? " - Charles Babbage (1864)

how many times do you have to turn the crank?

Analytic Engine

## Models of computation: Turing machines

Deterministic Turing machine. Simple and idealistic model.


Running time. Number of steps.
Memory. Number of tape cells utilized.

Caveat. No random access of memory.

- Single-tape TM requires $\geq n^{2}$ steps to detect $n$-bit palindromes.
- Easy to detect palindromes in $\leq c n$ steps on a real computer.


## Models of computation: word RAM

## Word RAM.

- Each memory location and input/output cell stores a $w$-bit integer.
- Primitive operations: arithmetic/logic operations, read/write memory, array indexing, following a pointer, conditional branch, ...
constant-time C-style operations ( $w=64$ )


Running time. Number of primitive operations.
Memory. Number of memory cells utilized.

Caveat. At times, need more refined model (e.g., multiplying $n$-bit integers).

## Brute force

Brute force. For many nontrivial problems, there is a natural brute-force search algorithm that checks every possible solution.

- Typically takes $2^{n}$ steps (or worse) for inputs of size $n$.
- Unacceptable in practice.


Ex. Stable matching problem: test all $n$ ! perfect matchings for stability.

## Polynomial running time

Desirable scaling property. When the input size doubles, the algorithm should slow down by at most some constant factor $C$.

Def. An algorithm is poly-time if the above scaling property holds.

There exist constants $\mathbf{c}>0$ and $\mathbf{d}>0$ such that, for every input of size $n$, the running time of the algorithm is bounded above by $\mathbf{c} \mathrm{n}^{\text {d }}$ primitive computational steps.

Nash
(1955)

Gödel
(1956)

Cobham (1964)

Edmonds
(1965)


## Polynomial running time

We say that an algorithm is efficient if it has a polynomial running time.

Theory. Definition is (relatively) insensitive to model of computation.

Practice. It really works!

- The poly-time algorithms that people develop have both small constants and small exponents.
- Breaking through the exponential barrier of brute force typically exposes some crucial structure of the problem.

Exceptions. Some poly-time algorithms in the wild have galactic constants and/or huge exponents.
Q. Which would you prefer: $20 n^{120}$ or $n^{1+0.02 \ln n}$ ?

## Worst-case analysis

Worst case. Running time guarantee for any input of size $n$.

- Generally captures efficiency in practice.
- Draconian view, but hard to find effective alternative.

Exceptions. Some exponential-time algorithms are used widely in practice because the worst-case instances don't arise.

simplex algorithm


Linux grep

k-means algorithm

## Other types of analyses

Probabilistic. Expected running time of a randomized algorithm.
Ex. The expected number of compares to quicksort $n$ elements is $\sim 2 n \ln n$.


Amortized. Worst-case running time for any sequence of $n$ operations.
Ex. Starting from an empty stack, any sequence of $n$ push and pop operations takes $O(n)$ primitive computational steps using a resizing array.


Also. Average-case analysis, smoothed analysis, competitive analysis, ...

## PROBLEM COMPLEXITY

algorithm complexity versus problem complexity

- lower bound of the problem complexity
- proof techniques
- upper bound of the problem complexity
- complexity of the particular algorithm solving the problem
- problem complexity
- given by a lower and upper bound
- tight bounds


## LOWER BOUND PROOF TECHNIQUES

- information-theoretic arguments
- decision tree
- problem reduction
- adversary arguments


## INFORMATION-THEORETIC ARGUMENTS

based on counting the number of items in the problems' input that must be processed and the number of output items that need to be produced
list all permutations of $n$-elements sequence
the number of permutation is $n!$; lower bound is $\Omega(n!)$; problem complexity is $\Theta(n!)$
evaluate a polynomial of degree $n$ at a given point $x$
lower bound is $\Omega(n)$; problem complexity is $\Theta(n)$
product of two $n$-by- $n$ matrices
lower bound is $\Omega\left(n^{2}\right)$ (size of the result); upper bound is $\mathcal{O}\left(n^{\log _{2} 7}\right)$; problem complexity is ???

## Traveling Salesperson

lower bound is $\Omega\left(n^{2}\right)$ (number of graph edges); upper bound is exponential; problem complexity is ???

## DECISION TREES

- many algorithms work by comparing items of their inputs
- we study performance of such algorithms with a device called the decision tree
- decision tree represents computations on inputs of length $n$
- each internal node represents a key comparison
- node's degree is proportional to the number of possible answers and node's subtrees contain information about subsequent comparisons
- each leaf represents a possible outcome; the number of leaves must be at least as large as the number of possible outcomes
- the algorithms's work on a particular input of size $n$ can be traced by a path from the root to a leaf


## DECISION TREES AND LOWER BOUNDS

- a tree with a given number of leaves has to be tall enough
- a tree with degree $k$ and $I$ leaves has depth at least $\left\lceil\log _{k} I\right\rceil$
- $\Omega(\log I(n))$ is the lower bound for problem complexity $(I(n)$ is the number of possible outputs for inputs of length $n$ )


## DECISION TREES FOR SEARCHING A SORTED ARRAY

Input sorted sequence of numbers $\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right)$, number $x$ Output index $i$ such that $x_{i}=x$ or NONE

- key comparisons
- $n+1$ possible outcomes
- lower bound $\Omega(\log n)$
- lower bound is tight


## DECISION TREES FOR SORTING ALGORITHMS

Input sequence of pairwise different numbers $\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right)$
Output permutation $\Pi$ such that $x_{\Pi(1)}<x_{\Pi(2)}<\ldots<x_{\Pi(n)}$

- key comparisons: $x_{i}<x_{j}$
- $n$ ! possible outcomes (number of permutations)
- lower bound $\Omega(\log n!)$
- $\log n!\in \Omega(n \log n)$ (viz Stirling formulae)
- lower bound is tight


## PROBLEM REDUCTION

```
if we know a lower bound for problem Q
    and problem Q reduces to problem P
then lower bound for Q is as well a lower bound for P
```

$Q$ element uniqueness problem in $\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right)$ ?
$P$ Euclidean minimum spanning tree problem
lower bound for the element uniqueness problem is $\Omega(n \log n)$
reduction graph with vertices $\left(x_{1}, 0\right), \ldots\left(x_{n}, 0\right)$
checking whether the minimum spanning tree contains a zero-length edge answers the question about uniqueness of the given numbers
claim lower bound for the Euclidean minimum spanning tree problem is $\Omega(n \log n)$

## ADVERSARY ARGUMENTS

The idea is that an all-powerful malicious adversary pretends to choose an input for the algorithm. When the algorithm asks a question about the input, the adversary answers in whatever way will make the algorithm do the most work. If the algorithm does not ask enough queries before terminating, then there will be several different inputs, each consistent with the adversary's answers, that should result in different outputs. In this case, whatever the algorithm outputs, the adversary can 'reveal' an input that is consistent with its answers, but contradists the algorithm's output, an then claim that that was the input that he was using all along.

## ADVERSARY FOR THE MAXIMUM PROBLEM

The adversary originally pretends that $x_{i}=i$ for all $i$, and answers all comparison queries accordingly. Whenever the adversary reveals that $x_{i}<x_{j}$, he marks $x_{i}$ as an item that the algorithm knows (or should know) is not the maximum element. At most one element $x_{i}$ is marked after each comparison. Note that $x_{n}$ is never marked. If the algorithm does less than $n-1$ comparisons before it terminates, the adversary must have at least one other unmarked element $x_{k} \neq x_{n}$. In this case, the adversary can change the value of $x_{k}$ from $k$ to $n+1$ making $x_{k}$ the largest element, without being inconsistent with any of the comparisons that the algorithm has performed. However, $x_{n}$ is the maximum element in the original input, and $x_{k}$ is the largest element in the modified input, so the algorithm cannot possibly give the correct answer for both cases.

Any comparison-based algorithm solving the maximum element problem must perform at least $n-1$ comparisons.

## ADVERSARY FOR THE MAXIM. AND MINIM. PROBLEM

Similar arguments as for the maximum problem. Whenever the adversary reveals that $x_{i}<x_{j}$, he marks $x_{i}$ as an item that the algorithm knows is not the maximum element, and he marks $x_{j}$ as an item that the algorithm knows is not the minimum element. Whenever two already marked elements are compared, at most one new mark can be added. If the algorithm does less than $\lfloor n / 2\rfloor+n-2$ comparisons before it terminates, the adversary must have at least two elements that can be both the maximum or both minimum, so the algorithm cannot possibly give the correct answer .

Any comparison-based algorithm solving the maximum and minimum element problem must perform at least $\lfloor n / 2\rfloor+n-2$ comparisons.

ALGORITHM COMPLEXITY ANALYSIS

## ALGORITHM COMPLEXITY ANALYSIS

RECURSIVE ALGORITHMS



## 5. Divide and Conquer

- mergesort
- counting inversions
b randomized quicksort
- median and selection
- closest pair of points


## Median and selection problems

Selection. Given $n$ elements from a totally ordered universe, find $k^{\mathrm{h} ~}$ smallest.

- Minimum: $k=1$; maximum: $k=n$.
- Median: $k=\lfloor(n+1) / 2\rfloor$.
- $O(n)$ compares for min or max.
- $O(n \log n)$ compares by sorting.
- $O(n \log k)$ compares with a binary heap. $\longleftarrow \max$ heap with $k$ smallest

Applications. Order statistics; find the "top $k$ "; bottleneck paths, ...
Q. Can we do it with $O(n)$ compares?
A. Yes! Selection is easier than sorting.

## Randomized quickselect

- Pick a random pivot element $p \in A$.
- 3-way partition the array into $L, M$, and $R$.
- Recur in one subarray-the one containing the $k^{\text {th }}$ smallest element.

Quick-Select( $A, k$ )
Pick pivot $p \in A$ uniformly at random.
$(L, M, R) \leftarrow$ PARTITION-3-WAY $(A, p) . \longleftarrow \Theta(n)$
If $\quad(k \leq|L|) \quad$ Return Quick-Select $(L, k) . \longleftarrow T(i)$
ElSE IF $(k>|L|+|M|)$ Return QUick-Select $(R, k-|L|-|M|) \longleftarrow T(n-i-1)$
Else If $(k=|L|) \quad$ Return $p$.

## Randomized quickselect analysis

Intuition. Split candy bar uniformly $\Rightarrow$ expected size of larger piece is 34 .

$$
T(n) \leq T(3 n / 4)+n \Rightarrow T(n) \leq 4 n
$$

Def. $T(n, k)=$ expected \# compares to select $k^{\text {th }}$ smallest in array of length $\leq n$.
Def. $T(n)=\max _{k} T(n, k)$.

Proposition. $T(n) \leq 4 n$.
Pf. [ by strong induction on $n$ ]

- Assume true for $1,2, \ldots, n-1$.
- $T(n)$ satisfies the following recurrence:
can assume we always recur of larger of two subarrays since $T(n)$
is monotone non-decreasing
1

$$
\begin{aligned}
T(n) & \leq n+1 / n[2 T(n / 2)+\ldots+2 T(n-3)+2 T(n-2)+2 T(n-1)] \\
& \leq n+1 / n[8(n / 2)+\ldots+8(n-3)+8(n-2)+8(n-1)] \\
& \leq n+1 / n\left(3 n^{2}\right) \\
& =4 n . \quad . \quad \underbrace{}_{\text {tiny cheat: sum should start at } T(\lfloor n / 2\rfloor)}
\end{aligned}
$$

## Selection in worst-case linear time

Goal. Find pivot element $p$ that divides list of $n$ elements into two pieces so that each piece is guaranteed to have $\leq 7 / 10 n$ elements.
Q. How to find approximate median in linear time?
A. Recursively compute median of sample of $\leq 2 / 10 n$ elements.

$$
\begin{aligned}
T(n) & = \begin{cases}\Theta(1) & \text { if } n=1 \\
T(7 / 10 n)+T(2 / 10 n)+\Theta(n) & \text { otherwise }\end{cases} \\
& \Rightarrow T(n)=\Theta \begin{array}{c}
\text { two subproblems } \\
\text { of different sizes! }
\end{array} \\
& \text { we'll need to show this }
\end{aligned}
$$

Choosing the pivot element

- Divide $n$ elements into $\lfloor n / 5\rfloor$ groups of 5 elements each (plus extra).


Choosing the pivot element

- Divide $n$ elements into $\lfloor n / 5\rfloor$ groups of 5 elements each (plus extra).
- Find median of each group (except extra).



## Choosing the pivot element

- Divide $n$ elements into $\lfloor n / 5\rfloor$ groups of 5 elements each (plus extra).
- Find median of each group (except extra).
- Find median of $\lfloor n / 5\rfloor$ medians recursively.
- Use median-of-medians as pivot element.



## Median-of-medians selection algorithm

$\operatorname{Mom}-\operatorname{Select}(A, k)$
$n \leftarrow|A|$.
IF $(n<50)$
RETURN $k^{\text {th }}$ smallest of element of $A$ via mergesort.

Group $A$ into $\lfloor n / 5\rfloor$ groups of 5 elements each (ignore leftovers).
$B \leftarrow$ median of each group of 5 .
$p \leftarrow \operatorname{MOM}-\operatorname{SeLEct}(B,\lfloor n / 10\rfloor) \longleftarrow$ median of medians
$(L, M, R) \leftarrow$ PARTITION-3-WAY $(A, p)$.
If $\quad(k \leq|L|) \quad$ Return $\operatorname{Mom}-\operatorname{Select}(L, k)$.
Else If ( $k>|L|+|M|$ ) Return Mom-Select $(R, k-|L|-|M|)$
Else Return $p$.

Analysis of median-of-medians selection algorithm

- At least half of 5 -element medians $\leq p$.


Analysis of median-of-medians selection algorithm

- At least half of 5-element medians $\leq p$.
- At least $\lfloor\lfloor n / 5\rfloor / 2\rfloor=\lfloor n / 10\rfloor$ medians $\leq p$.


Analysis of median-of-medians selection algorithm

- At least half of 5 -element medians $\leq p$.
- At least $\lfloor\lfloor n / 5\rfloor / 2\rfloor=\lfloor n / 10\rfloor$ medians $\leq p$.
- At least $3\lfloor n / 10\rfloor$ elements $\leq p$.


Analysis of median-of-medians selection algorithm

- At least half of 5 -element medians $\geq p$.


Analysis of median-of-medians selection algorithm

- At least half of 5-element medians $\geq p$.
- At least $\lfloor\lfloor n / 5\rfloor / 2\rfloor=\lfloor n / 10\rfloor$ medians $\geq p$.


Analysis of median-of-medians selection algorithm

- At least half of 5 -element medians $\geq p$.
- At least $\lfloor\lfloor n / 5\rfloor / 2\rfloor=\lfloor n / 10\rfloor$ medians $\geq p$.
- At least $3\lfloor n / 10\rfloor$ elements $\geq p$.



## Median-of-medians selection algorithm recurrence

Median-of-medians selection algorithm recurrence.

- Select called recursively with $\lfloor n / 5\rfloor$ elements to compute MOM $p$.
- At least $3\lfloor n / 10\rfloor$ elements $\leq p$.
- At least $3\lfloor n / 10\rfloor$ elements $\geq p$.
- Select called recursively with at most $n-3\lfloor n / 10\rfloor$ elements.

Def. $C(n)=$ max \# compares on any array of $n$ elements.

$$
\begin{array}{cc}
C(n) \leq C(\lfloor n / 5\rfloor)+C(n-3\lfloor n / 10\rfloor) & +\frac{11}{5} n \\
\begin{array}{cc}
\text { median of } \\
\text { medians } & \text { recursive } \\
\text { select } & \text { computing median of 5 } \\
& \\
& \begin{array}{c}
\text { partitioning } \\
(\leq n \text { compares per group })
\end{array}
\end{array}
\end{array}
$$

Intuition.

- $C(n)$ is going to be at least linear in $n \Rightarrow C(n)$ is super-additive.
- Ignoring floors, this implies that $C(n) \leq C(n / 5+n-3 n / 10)+11 / 5 n$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& =C(9 n / 10)+11 / 5 n \\
& \Rightarrow C(n) \leq 22 n .
\end{aligned}
$$

## Median-of-medians selection algorithm recurrence

Median-of-medians selection algorithm recurrence.

- Select called recursively with $\lfloor n / 5\rfloor$ elements to compute MOM $p$.
- At least $3\lfloor n / 10\rfloor$ elements $\leq p$.
- At least $3\lfloor n / 10\rfloor$ elements $\geq p$.
- Select called recursively with at most $n-3\lfloor n / 10\rfloor$ elements.

Def. $C(n)=$ max \# compares on any array of $n$ elements.


Now, let's solve given recurrence.

- Assume $n$ is both a power of 5 and a power of 10 ?
- Prove that $C(n)$ is monotone non-decreasing.

Divide-and-conquer: quiz 4

Consider the following recurrence

$$
C(n)= \begin{cases}0 & \text { if } n \leq 1 \\ C(\lfloor n / 5\rfloor)+C(n-3\lfloor n / 10\rfloor)+\frac{11}{5} n & \text { if } n>1\end{cases}
$$

Is $C(n)$ monotone non-decreasing?
A. Yes, obviously.
B. Yes, but proof is tedious.
C. Yes, but proof is hard.
D. No.

## Median-of-medians selection algorithm recurrence

Analysis of selection algorithm recurrence.

- $T(n)=\max \#$ compares on any array of $\leq n$ elements.
- $T(n)$ is monotone non-decreasing, but $C(n)$ is not!

$$
T(n) \leq \begin{cases}6 n & \text { if } n<50 \\ \left.\max \left\{T(n-1), T(\lfloor n / 5\rfloor)+T(n-3\lfloor n / 10\rfloor)+\frac{11}{5} n\right)\right\} & \text { if } n \geq 50\end{cases}
$$

Claim. $T(n) \leq 44 n$.
Pf. [ by strong induction]

- Base case: $T(n) \leq 6 n$ for $n<50$ (mergesort).
- Inductive hypothesis: assume true for $1,2, \ldots, n-1$.
- Induction step: for $n \geq 50$, we have either $T(n) \leq T(n-1) \leq 44 n$ or

$$
T(n) \leq T(\lfloor n / 5\rfloor)+T(n-3\lfloor n / 10\rfloor)+11 / 5 n
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
\begin{array}{c}
\text { inductive } \\
\text { hypothesis }
\end{array} & \leq 44(\lfloor n / 5\rfloor)+44(n-3\lfloor n / 10\rfloor)+11 / 5 n \\
& \leq 44(n / 5)+44 n-44(n / 4)+11 / 5 n \longleftarrow \\
& =44 n .
\end{aligned}
$$

## Divide-and-conquer: quiz 5

Suppose that we divide $n$ elements into $\lfloor n / r\rfloor$ groups of $r$ elements each, and use the median-of-medians of these $\lfloor n / r\rfloor$ groups as the pivot. For which $r$ is the worst-case running time of select $O(n)$ ?
A. $r=3$
B. $r=7$
C. Both A and B.
D. Neither A nor B.

## Linear-time selection retrospective

Proposition. [Blum-Floyd-Pratt-Rivest-Tarjan 1973] There exists a compare-based selection algorithm whose worst-case running time is $O(n)$.

Time Bounds for Selection*<br>Manuel Blum, Robert W. Floyd, Vaughan Pratt,<br>Ronald L. Rivest, and Robert E. Tarjan<br>Department of Computer Science, Stanford University, Stanford, California 94305

Received November 14, 1972

The number of comparisons required to select the $i$-th smallest of $n$ numbers is shown to be at most a linear function of $n$ by analysis of a new selection algorithm-PICK. Specifically, no more than $5.4305^{\circ} n$ comparisons are ever required. This bound is improved for extreme values of $i$, and a new lower bound on the requisite number of comparisons is also proved.

Theory.

- Optimized version of BFPRT: $\leq 5.4305 n$ compares.
- Upper bound: [Dor-Zwick 1995] $\leq 2.95 n$ compares.
- Lower bound: [Dor-Zwick 1999] $\geq\left(2+2^{-80}\right) n$ compares.

Practice. Constants too large to be useful.


## ALGORITHM COMPLEXITY ANALYSIS

ITERATIVE ALGORITHMS



## 1. Stable Matching

- stable matching problem
- Gale-Shapley algorithm
- hospital optimality
- context

Lecture slides by Kevin Wayne Copyright © 2005 Pearson-Addison Wesley http://www.cs.princeton.edu/~wayne/kleinberg-tardos


Section 1.1

## 1. Stable Matching

- stable matching problem
- Gale-Shapley algorithm
- hospital optimality
- context


## Matching med-school students to hospitals

Goal. Given a set of preferences among hospitals and med-school students, design a self-reinforcing admissions process.

Unstable pair. Hospital $h$ and student $s$ form an unstable pair if both:

- $h$ prefers $s$ to one of its admitted students.
- $s$ prefers $h$ to assigned hospital.

Stable assignment. Assignment with no unstable pairs.

- Natural and desirable condition.
- Individual self-interest prevents any hospital-student side deal.



## Stable matching problem: input

Input. A set of $n$ hospitals $H$ and a set of $n$ students $S$.

- Each hospital $h \in H$ ranks students.
one student per hospital (for now)
- Each student $s \in S$ ranks hospitals.

|  | favorite | least favorite |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | $\downarrow$ |  |  |
|  | 1st | 2nd | 3rd |
|  | Atlanta | Xavier | Yolanda |
| Boston | Yolanda | Xeus |  |
| Chicago | Xavier | Yolanda | Zeus |
|  | hospitals' preference lists |  |  |


|  | favorite |  | least favorite |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | $\downarrow$ |  | $\downarrow$ |
|  | 1st | 2nd | 3rd |
| Xavier | Boston | Atlanta | Chicago |
| Yolanda | Atlanta | Boston | Chicago |
| Zeus | Atlanta | Boston | Chicago |
|  | students' preference lists |  |  |

## Perfect matching

Def. A matching $M$ is a set of ordered pairs $h-s$ with $h \in H$ and $s \in S$ s.t.

- Each hospital $h \in H$ appears in at most one pair of $M$.
- Each student $s \in S$ appears in at most one pair of $M$.

Def. A matching $M$ is perfect if $|M|=|H|=|S|=n$.

|  | 1st | 2nd | 3 rd |  | 1st | 2nd | 3 rd |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Atlanta | Xavier | Yolanda | Zeus | Xavier | Boston | Atlanta | Chicago |
| Boston | Yolanda | Xavier | Zeus | Yolanda | Atlanta | Boston | Chicago |
| Chicago | Xavier | Yolanda | Zeus | Zeus | Atlanta | Boston | Chicago |

a perfect matching $M=\{A-Z, B-Y, C-X\}$

## Unstable pair

Def. Given a perfect matching $M$, hospital $h$ and student $s$ form an unstable pair if both:

- $h$ prefers $s$ to matched student.
- $s$ prefers $h$ to matched hospital.

Key point. An unstable pair $h-s$ could each improve by joint action.

|  | 1st | 2nd | 3rd |  |  | 1st | 2nd |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 3rd |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Atlanta | Xavier | Yolanda | Zeus |  | Xavier | Boston | Atlanta |
| Chicago |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Boston | Yolanda | Xavier | Zeus |  | Yolanda | Atlanta | Boston |
| Chicago | Xavier | Yolanda | Zeus |  | Zeus | Atlanta | Boston |
| Chicago |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

$A-Y$ is an unstable pair for matching $M=\{A-Z, B-Y, C-X\}$

Stable matching: quiz 1

## Which pair is unstable in the matching \{ $\mathrm{A}-\mathrm{X}, \mathrm{B}-\mathrm{Z}, \mathrm{C}-\mathrm{Y}$ \} ?

A. $A-Y$.
B. $\quad \mathrm{B}-\mathrm{X}$.
C. $\mathrm{B}-\mathrm{Z}$.
D. None of the above.

|  | 1st | 2nd | 3rd |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Atlanta | Xavier | Yolanda | Zeus |
| Boston | Yolanda | Xavier | Zeus |
| Chicago | Xavier | Yolanda | Zeus |


|  | $1^{\text {st }}$ | 2nd | 3rd |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Xavier | Boston | Atlanta | Chicago |
| Yolanda | Atlanta | Boston | Chicago |
| Zeus | Atlanta | Boston | Chicago |

## Stable matching problem

Def. A stable matching is a perfect matching with no unstable pairs.

Stable matching problem. Given the preference lists of $n$ hospitals and $n$ students, find a stable matching (if one exists).

|  | 1st | 2nd | 3 rd |  | 1st | 2nd | 3 rd |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Atlanta | Xavier | Yolanda | Zeus | Xavier | Boston | Atlanta | Chicago |
| Boston | Yolanda | Xavier | Zeus | Yolanda | Atlanta | Boston | Chicago |
| Chicago | Xavier | Yolanda | Zeus | Zeus | Atlanta | Boston | Chicago |

a stable matching $M=\{A-X, B-Y, C-Z\}$

## Stable roommate problem

Q. Do stable matchings always exist?
A. Not obvious a priori.

Stable roommate problem.

- $2 n$ people; each person ranks others from 1 to $2 n-1$.
- Assign roommate pairs so that no unstable pairs.


$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { no perfect matching is stable } \\
& A-B, C-D \quad \Rightarrow \quad B-C \text { unstable } \\
& A-C, B-D \quad \Rightarrow \quad A-B \text { unstable } \\
& A-D, B-C \quad \Rightarrow \quad A-C \text { unstable }
\end{aligned}
$$

Observation. Stable matchings need not exist.


Section 1.1

## 1. Stable Matching

> stable matching problem

- Gale-Shapley algorithm
> hospital optimality
- context


## Gale-Shapley deferred acceptance algorithm

An intuitive method that guarantees to find a stable matching.

GALE-SHAPLEY (preference lists for hospitals and students)
Initialize $M$ to empty matching.
WHILE (some hospital $h$ is unmatched and hasn't proposed to every student)
$s \leftarrow$ first student on $h$ 's list to whom $h$ has not yet proposed.
IF ( $s$ is unmatched)
Add $h-s$ to matching $M$.
ELSE IF ( $s$ prefers $h$ to current partner $h^{\prime}$ )
Replace $h^{\prime}-s$ with $h-s$ in matching $M$.
ELSE
$s$ rejects $h$.

RETURN stable matching $M$.

## Proof of correctness: termination

Observation 1. Hospitals propose to students in decreasing order of preference.

Observation 2. Once a student is matched, the student never becomes unmatched; only "trades up."

Claim. Algorithm terminates after at most $n^{2}$ iterations of while loop. Pf. Each time through the while loop, a hospital proposes to a new student. Thus, there are at most $n^{2}$ possible proposals. -

|  | 1st | $2{ }^{\text {nd }}$ | 3 rd | 4th | 5th |  | 1st | 2nd | 3 rd | $4^{\text {th }}$ | 5th |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| A | V | W | X | Y | Z | v | B | C | D | E | A |
| B | W | X | Y | v | Z | W | C | D | E | A | B |
| C | X | Y | V | W | Z | X | D | E | A | B | C |
| D | Y | v | W | X | Z | Y | E | A | B | C | D |
| E | V | W | X | Y | Z | Z | A | B | C | D | E |

## Proof of correctness: perfect matching

Claim. Gale-Shapley outputs a matching.
Pf.

- Hospital proposes only if unmatched. $\Rightarrow$ matched to $\leq 1$ student
- Student keeps only best hospital. $\Rightarrow$ matched to $\leq 1$ hospital

Claim. In Gale-Shapley matching, all hospitals get matched.
Pf. [by contradiction]

- Suppose, for sake of contradiction, that some hospital $h \in H$ is unmatched upon termination of Gale-Shapley algorithm.
- Then some student, say $s \in S$, is unmatched upon termination.
- By Observation 2, s was never proposed to.
- But, $h$ proposes to every student, since $h$ ends up unmatched. ※

Claim. In Gale-Shapley matching, all students get matched.
Pf. [by counting]

- By previous claim, all $n$ hospitals get matched.
- Thus, all $n$ students get matched. -


## Proof of correctness: stability

Claim. In Gale-Shapley matching $M^{*}$, there are no unstable pairs.
Pf. Consider any pair $h-s$ that is not in $M^{*}$.

- Case 1: $h$ never proposed to $s$.
$\Rightarrow h$ prefers its Gale-Shapley partner $s^{\prime}$ to $s . \longleftarrow$ decreasing order
$\Rightarrow h-s$ is not unstable.
- Case 2: $h$ proposed to $s$.
$\Rightarrow s$ rejected $h$ (either right away or later)
$\Rightarrow s$ prefers Gale-Shapley partner $h^{\prime}$ to $h$.
$\Rightarrow h-s$ is not unstable.
students only trade up
- In either case, the pair $h-s$ is not unstable. -

$$
\begin{gathered}
h-s^{\prime} \\
h^{\prime}-s
\end{gathered}
$$

.

Gale-Shapley matching $\mathbf{M}^{*}$

## Summary

# Stable matching problem. Given $n$ hospitals and $n$ students, and their preference lists, find a stable matching if one exists. 

# Theorem. [Gale-Shapley 1962] The Gale-Shapley algorithm guarantees to find a stable matching for any problem instance. 


#### Abstract

COLLEGE ADMISSIONS AND THE STABILITY OF MARRIAGE D. GALE* AND L. S. SHAPLEY, Brown University and the RAND Corporation 1. Introduction. The problem with which we shall be concerned relates to the following typical situation: A college is considering a set of $n$ applicants of which it can admit a quota of only $q$. Having evaluated their qualifications, the admissions office must decide which ones to admit. The procedure of offering admission only to the $q$ best-qualified applicants will not generally be satisfactory, for it cannot be assumed that all who are offered admission will accept. Accordingly, in order for a college to receive $q$ acceptances, it will generally have to offer to admit more than $q$ applicants. The problem of determining how many and which ones to admit requires some rather involved guesswork. It may not be known (a) whether a given applicant has also applied elsewhere; if this is known it may not be known (b) how he ranks the colleges to which he has applied; even if this is known it will not be known (c) which of the other colleges will offer to admit him. A result of all this uncertainty is that colleges can expect only that the entering class will come reasonably close in numbers to the desired quota, and be reasonably close to the attainable optimum in quality.


Stable matching: quiz 2
Do all executions of Gale-Shapley lead to the same stable matching?
A. No, because the algorithm is nondeterministic.
B. No, because an instance can have several stable matchings.
C. Yes, because each instance has a unique stable matching.
D. Yes, even though an instance can have several stable matchings and the algorithm is nondeterministic.


Section 1.1

## 1. Stable Matching

> stable matching problem

- Gale-Shapley algorithm
- hospital optimality
b context


## Understanding the solution

For a given problem instance, there may be several stable matchings.

|  | 1 $^{\text {st }}$ | 2nd | 3rd |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| A | $X$ | $Y$ | $Z$ |
| B | $Y$ | $X$ | $Z$ |
| C | $X$ | $Y$ | $Z$ |


|  | $1^{\text {st }}$ | $2^{\text {nd }}$ | $3^{\text {rd }}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| X | B | A | C |
| Y | A | B | C |
| Z | A | B | C |

an instance with two stable matchings: $S=\{A-X, B-Y, C-Z\}$ and $S^{\prime}=\{A-Y, B-X, C-Z\}$

## Understanding the solution

Def. Student $s$ is a valid partner for hospital $h$ if there exists any stable matching in which $h$ and $s$ are matched.

Ex.

- Both $X$ and $Y$ are valid partners for $A$.
- Both $X$ and $Y$ are valid partners for $B$.
- $Z$ is the only valid partner for $C$.

|  | 1st | 2nd | 3rd |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| A | $X$ | $Y$ | $Z$ |
| B | $Y$ | $X$ | $Z$ |
| C | $X$ | $Y$ | $Z$ |


|  | $1^{\text {st }}$ | $2^{\text {nd }}$ | $3^{\text {rd }}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| X | B | A | C |
| Y | A | B | C |
| Z | A | B | C |

an instance with two stable matchings: $S=\{A-X, B-Y, C-Z\}$ and $S^{\prime}=\{A-Y, B-X, C-Z\}$

Stable matching: quiz 3

## Who is the best valid partner for W in the following instance?

A.
B.
C.
D.
$\frac{6 \text { stable matchings }}{\text { A-W, B-X, C-Y, D-Z \} }}$
\{ A-X, B-W, C-Y, D-Z \}
\{ A-X, B-Y, C-W, D-Z \}
\{ A-Z, B-W, C-Y, D-X \}
\{ A-Z, B-Y, C-W, D-X \}
\{ A-Y, B-Z, C-W, D-X \}

|  | $1^{\text {st }}$ | $2^{\text {nd }}$ | $3^{\text {rd }}$ | $4^{\text {th }}$ |  | $1^{\text {st }}$ | $2^{\text {nd }}$ | $3^{\text {rd }}$ | $4^{\text {th }}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| A | Y | Z | X | W |  | W | D | A | B |
| B | Z | Y | W | X |  | X | C | B | A |
| C | W | Y | X | Z |  | Y | C | B | A |
| D | X | Z | W | Y | Z | D | A | B | C |

## Understanding the solution

Def. Student $s$ is a valid partner for hospital $h$ if there exists any stable matching in which $h$ and $s$ are matched.

Hospital-optimal assignment. Each hospital receives best valid partner.

- Is it a perfect matching?
- Is it stable?

Claim. All executions of Gale-Shapley yield hospital-optimal assignment.
Corollary. Hospital-optimal assignment is a stable matching!

## Hospital optimality

Claim. Gale-Shapley matching $M^{*}$ is hospital-optimal.

## Pf. [by contradiction]

- Suppose a hospital is matched with student other than best valid partner.
- Hospitals propose in decreasing order of preference.
$\Rightarrow$ some hospital is rejected by a valid partner during Gale-Shapley
- Let $h$ be first such hospital, and let $s$ be the first valid partner that rejects $h$.
- Let $M$ be a stable matching where $h$ and $s$ are matched.
- When $s$ rejects $h$ in Gale-Shapley, $s$ forms (or re-affirms) commitment to a hospital, say $h^{\prime}$.
$\Rightarrow s$ prefers $h^{\prime}$ to $h$.
- Let $s^{\prime}$ be partner of $h^{\prime}$ in $M$.
- $h^{\prime}$ had not been rejected by any valid partner (including $s^{\prime}$ ) at the point when $h$ is rejected by $s . \longleftarrow \begin{gathered}\text { because this is the first } \\ \text { rejection by a valid partner }\end{gathered}$
- Thus, $h^{\prime}$ had not yet proposed to $s^{\prime}$ when $h^{\prime}$ proposed to $s$. $\Rightarrow h^{\prime}$ prefers $s$ to $s^{\prime}$.
- Thus, $h^{\prime}-s$ is unstable in $M$, a contradiction. -


## Student pessimality

Q. Does hospital-optimality come at the expense of the students?
A. Yes.

Student-pessimal assignment. Each student receives worst valid partner.

Claim. Gale-Shapley finds student-pessimal stable matching $M^{*}$.
Pf. [by contradiction]

- Suppose $h-s$ matched in $M^{*}$ but $h$ is not the worst valid partner for $s$.
- There exists stable matching $M$ in which $s$ is paired with a hospital, say $h^{\prime}$, whom $s$ prefers less than $h$.
$\Rightarrow s$ prefers $h$ to $h^{\prime}$.
- Let $s^{\prime}$ be the partner of $h$ in $M$.
- By hospital-optimality, $s$ is the best valid partner for $h$. $\Rightarrow h$ prefers $s$ to $s^{\prime}$.
- Thus, $h-s$ is an unstable pair in $M$, a contradiction. -
$h^{\prime}-s$
$h-s^{\prime}$
$\vdots$
stable matching M

Stable matching: quiz 4

Suppose each agent knows the preference lists of every other agent before the hospital propose-and-reject algorithm is executed. Which is true?
A. No hospital can improve by falsifying its preference list.
B. No student can improve by falsifying their preference list.
C. Both A and B.
D. Neither A nor B.


## 1. Stable Matching

> stable matching problem

- Gale-Shapley algorithm
- hospital ontimalith
- context


## Extensions

Extension 1. Some agents declare others as unacceptable.
Extension 2. Some hospitals have more than one position.
med-school student

Extension 3. Unequal number of positions and students.

Def. Matching $M$ is unstable if there is a hospital $h$ and student $s$ such that:

- $h$ and $s$ are acceptable to each other; and
- Either $s$ is unmatched, or $s$ prefers $h$ to assigned hospital; and
- Either $h$ does not have all its places filled, or $h$ prefers $s$ to at least one of its assigned students.

Theorem. There exists a stable matching.
Pf. Straightforward generalization of Gale-Shapley algorithm.

## Historical context

National resident matching program (NRMP).

- Centralized clearinghouse to match med-school students to hospitals.
- Began in 1952 to fix unraveling of offer dates.
- Originally used the "Boston Pool" algorithm.
hospitals began making
- Algorithm overhauled in 1998. offers earlier and earlier, up to 2 years in advance
- med-school student optimal
- deals with various side constraints
(e.g., allow couples to match together) $\qquad$

Some Engineering Aspects of Economic Design
By Alvin E. Roth and Elliott Peranson*

We report on the design of the new clearinghouse adopted by the National Resident Matching Program, which annually fills approximately 20,000 jobs for new physicians. Because the market has complementarities between applicants and between positions, the theory of simple matching markets does not apply directly. However, computational experiments show the theory provides good approximations. Furthermore, the set of stable matchings, and the opportunities for strategic manipulation, are surprisingly small. A new kind of "core convergence" result explains this; that each applicant interviews only a small fraction of available positions is important. We also describe engineering aspects of the design process. (JEL C78, B41, J44)

## 2012 Nobel Prize in Economics

## Lloyd Shapley. Stable matching theory and Gale-Shapley algorithm.

## COLLEGE ADMISSIONS AND THE STABILITY OF MARRIAGE

D. GALE* AND L. S. SHAPLEY, Brown University and the RAND Corporation

1. Introduction. The problem with which we shall be concerned relates to the following typical situation: A college is considering a set of $n$ applicants of which it can admit a quota of only $q$. Having evaluated their qualifications, the admissions office must decide which ones to admit. The procedure of offering admission only to the $q$ best-qualified applicants will not generally be satisfactory, for it cannot be assumed that all who are offered admission will accept.
original applications:
college admissions and
opposite-sex marriage

Alvin Roth. Applied Gale-Shapley to matching med-school students with hospitals, students with schools, and organ donors with patients.


# New York City high school match 

8th grader. Ranks top-5 high schools.
High school. Ranks students (and limit).
Goal. Match 90 K students to 500 high school programs.

# How Game Theory Helped Improve New York City's High School Application Process 

By TRACY TULLIS DEC. 5, 2014



Tuesday was the deadline for eighth graders in New York City to submit applications to secure a spot at one of 426 public high schools. After months of school tours and tests, auditions and interviews, 75,000 students have entrusted their choices to a computer program that will arrange their school assignments for the coming year. The weeks of research and deliberation will be reduced to a fraction of a second of mathematical calculation: In just a couple of hours, all the sorting for the Class of 2019 will be finished.

Questbridge national college match

Low-income student. Ranks colleges.
College. Ranks students willing to admit (and limit).
Goal. Match students to colleges.


## A modern application

Content delivery networks. Distribute much of world's content on web.

User. Preferences based on latency and packet loss.

Web server. Preferences based on costs of bandwidth and co-location.
Goal. Assign billions of users to servers, every 10 seconds.

## Algorithmic Nuggets in Content Delivery

Bruce M. Maggs
bmm@cs.duke.edu

Ramesh K. Sitaraman UMass, Amherst and Akamai ramesh@cs.umass.edu

This article is an editorial note submitted to CCR. It has NOT been peer reviewed
The authors take full responsibility for this article's technical content. Comments can be posted through CCR Online.

## ABSTRACT

This paper "peeks under the covers" at the subsystems that provide the basic functionality of a leading content delivery network. Based on our experiences in building one of the largest distributed systems in the world, we illustrate how sophisticated algorithmic research has been adapted to balance the load between and within server clusters, manage the caches on servers, select paths through an overlay routing network, and elect leaders in various contexts. In each instance, we first explain the theory underlying the algorithms, then introduce practical considerations not captured by the theoretical models, and finally describe what is tured by the theoretical models, and finally describe what is light the role of algorithmic research in the design of complex networked systems. The paper also illustrates the close
 synergy that exists between research and industry where research ideas cross over into products and product requirements drive future research.

## AMORTIZED COMPLEXITY

## AMORTIZED COMPLEXITY

AMORTIZED ANALYSIS


## DATA STRUCTURES I, II, III, AND IV

I. Amortized Analysis
II. Binary and Binomial Heaps
III. Fibonacci Heaps
IV. Union-Find

## Lecture slides by Kevin Wayne

http://www.cs.princeton.edu/~wayne/kleinberg-tardos

## Data structures

Static problems. Given an input, produce an output.
Ex. Sorting, FFT, edit distance, shortest paths, MST, max-flow, ...

Dynamic problems. Given a sequence of operations (given one at a time), produce a sequence of outputs.
Ex. Stack, queue, priority queue, symbol table, union-find, ....

Algorithm. Step-by-step procedure to solve a problem.
Data structure. Way to store and organize data.
Ex. Array, linked list, binary heap, binary search tree, hash table, ...


Goal. Design a data structure to support all operations in $O(1)$ time.

- $\operatorname{INIT}(n)$ : create and return an initialized array (all zero) of length $n$.
- Read $(A, i)$ : return element $i$ in array.
- Write( $A, i$, value): set element $i$ in array to value.


## Assumptions.

true in C or C++, but not Java

- Can malloc an uninitialized array of length $n$ in $O(1)$ time.
- Given an array, can read or write element $i$ in $O(1)$ time.

Remark. An array does INIT in $\Theta(n)$ time and Read and Write in $\Theta(1)$ time.

## Appetizer

Data structure. Three arrays $A[1 . . n], B[1 . . n]$, and $C[1 . . n]$, and an integer $k$.

- $A[i]$ stores the current value for ReAD (if initialized).
- $k=$ number of initialized entries.
- $C[j]=$ index of $j^{t h}$ initialized element for $j=1, \ldots, k$.
- If $C[j]=i$, then $B[i]=j$ for $j=1, \ldots, k$.

Theorem. $A[i]$ is initialized iff both $1 \leq B[i] \leq k$ and $C[B[i]]=i$. Pf. Ahead.

$A[4]=99, A[6]=33, A[2]=22$, and $A[3]=55$ initialized in that order

## Appetizer

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { INIT }(A, n) \\
& k \leftarrow 0 . \\
& A \leftarrow \operatorname{MaLLOC}(n) . \\
& B \leftarrow \operatorname{MALLOC}(n) . \\
& C \leftarrow \operatorname{MALLOC}(n) .
\end{aligned}
$$

$\operatorname{READ}(A, i)$
IF (Is-Initialized ( $A[i]$ )) Return $A[i]$.

ElSE
RETURN 0.

Write ( $A, i$, value)
IF (Is-Initialized $(A[i])$ ) $A[i] \leftarrow$ value.

ELSE

$$
\begin{aligned}
& k \leftarrow k+1 . \\
& A[i] \leftarrow \text { value } . \\
& B[i] \leftarrow k . \\
& C[k] \leftarrow i .
\end{aligned}
$$

Is-Initialized $(A, i)$
IF $(1 \leq B[i] \leq k)$ and $(C[B[i]]=i)$
RETURN true.
ElSE
RETURN false.

## Appetizer

Theorem. $A[i]$ is initialized iff both $1 \leq B[i] \leq k$ and $C[B[i]]=i$. Pf. $\Rightarrow$

- Suppose $A[i]$ is the $j^{\text {th }}$ entry to be initialized.
- Then $C[j]=i$ and $B[i]=j$.
- Thus, $C[B[i]]=i$.



## Appetizer

Theorem. $A[i]$ is initialized iff both $1 \leq B[i] \leq k$ and $C[B[i]]=i$.
Pf. $\Leftarrow$

- Suppose $A[i]$ is uninitialized.
- If $B[i]<1$ or $B[i]>k$, then $A[i]$ clearly uninitialized.
- If $1 \leq B[i] \leq k$ by coincidence, then we still can't have $C[B[i]]=i$ because none of the entries $C[1 . . k]$ can equal $i$. -




## AMORTIZED ANALYSIS

- binary counter
- multi-pop stack
- dynamic table


## Lecture slides by Kevin Wayne

http://www.cs.princeton.edu/~wayne/kleinberg-tardos

## Amortized analysis

Worst-case analysis. Determine worst-case running time of a data structure operation as function of the input size $n$.
can be too pessimistic if the only way to
encounter an expensive operation is when there were lots of previous cheap operations

Amortized analysis. Determine worst-case running time of a sequence of $n$ data structure operations.

Ex. Starting from an empty stack implemented with a dynamic table, any sequence of $n$ push and pop operations takes $O(n)$ time in the worst case.

## Amortized analysis: applications

- Splay trees.
- Dynamic table.
- Fibonacci heaps.
- Garbage collection.
- Move-to-front list updating.
- Push-relabel algorithm for max flow.
- Path compression for disjoint-set union.
- Structural modifications to red-black trees.
- Security, databases, distributed computing, ...



## Amortized Analysis

- binary counter
- multi-pop stack - dynamic table

Chapter 17

## Binary counter

Goal. Increment a $k$-bit binary counter $\left(\bmod 2^{k}\right)$.
Representation. $a_{j}=j^{\text {th }}$ least significant bit of counter.

| Counter value |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| 0 | $\begin{array}{lllllllll}0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0\end{array}$ |
| 1 | $\begin{array}{lllllllll}0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1\end{array}$ |
| 2 | $\begin{array}{llllllll}0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0\end{array}$ |
| 3 | $\begin{array}{llllllll}0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1\end{array}$ |
| 4 | $\begin{array}{lllllllll}0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0\end{array}$ |
| 5 |  |
| 6 | $\begin{array}{llllllll}0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 0\end{array}$ |
| 7 | $\begin{array}{llllllll}0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1\end{array}$ |
| 8 | $\begin{array}{lllllllll}0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0\end{array}$ |
| 9 | $\begin{array}{llllllll}0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1\end{array}$ |
| 10 | $\begin{array}{llllllll}0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0\end{array}$ |
| 11 | $\begin{array}{llllllll}0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1\end{array}$ |
| 12 | $\begin{array}{llllllllll}0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0\end{array}$ |
| 13 |  |
| 14 | $\begin{array}{lllllllll}0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0\end{array}$ |
| 15 | $\begin{array}{llllllll}0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 1\end{array}$ |
| 16 | $\begin{array}{lllllllll}0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0\end{array}$ |

Cost model. Number of bits flipped.

## Binary counter

Goal. Increment a $k$-bit binary counter $\left(\bmod 2^{k}\right)$.
Representation. $a_{j}=j^{\text {th }}$ least significant bit of counter.

| Counter value |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| 0 | $\begin{array}{llllllll}0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0\end{array}$ |
| 1 | $\begin{array}{llllllll}0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1\end{array}$ |
| 2 | $0 \begin{array}{llllllll}0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0\end{array}$ |
| 3 | $\begin{array}{llllllll}0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1\end{array}$ |
| 4 | $\begin{array}{llllllll}0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0\end{array}$ |
| 5 | $\begin{array}{lllllllll}0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1\end{array}$ |
| 6 | $\begin{array}{llllllll}0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 0\end{array}$ |
| 7 | $\begin{array}{llllllll}0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1\end{array}$ |
| 8 | $\begin{array}{lllllllll}0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0\end{array}$ |
| 9 | $\begin{array}{llllllll}0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1\end{array}$ |
| 10 | $\begin{array}{llllllll}0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0\end{array}$ |
| 11 | $\begin{array}{llllllll}0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 1\end{array}$ |
| 12 | $\begin{array}{llllllll}0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0\end{array}$ |
| 13 | $\begin{array}{lllllllll}0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 1\end{array}$ |
| 14 | $\begin{array}{llllllll}0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0\end{array}$ |
| 15 | $\begin{array}{llllllll}0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 1\end{array}$ |
| 16 | $\begin{array}{llllllll}0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0\end{array}$ |

Theorem. Starting from the zero counter, a sequence of $n$ InCREMENT operations flips $O(n k)$ bits.
Pf. At most $k$ bits flipped per increment. -

## Aggregate method (brute force)

Aggregate method. Analyze cost of a sequence of operations.

| Counter value |  | Total cost |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 0 | $\begin{array}{llllllll}0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0\end{array}$ | 0 |
| 1 | $\begin{array}{lllllllll}0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1\end{array}$ | 1 |
| 2 | $\begin{array}{llllllll}0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0\end{array}$ | 3 |
| 3 | $\begin{array}{llllllll}0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1\end{array}$ | 4 |
| 4 | $\begin{array}{llllllll}0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0\end{array}$ | 7 |
| 5 | $\begin{array}{llllllll}0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1\end{array}$ | 8 |
| 6 | $\begin{array}{lllllllll}0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 0\end{array}$ | 10 |
| 7 | $\begin{array}{lllllllll}0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 1\end{array}$ | 11 |
| 8 | $\begin{array}{lllllllll}0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0\end{array}$ | 15 |
| 9 | $\begin{array}{lllllllll}0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1\end{array}$ | 16 |
| 10 | $\begin{array}{llllllll}0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0\end{array}$ | 18 |
| 11 | $\begin{array}{llllllll}0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 1\end{array}$ | 19 |
| 12 | $\begin{array}{lllllllll}0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0\end{array}$ | 22 |
| 13 | $\begin{array}{llllllll}0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 1\end{array}$ | 23 |
| 14 | $\begin{array}{lllllllll}0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0\end{array}$ | 25 |
| 15 | $\begin{array}{llllllll}0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1\end{array}$ | 26 |
| 16 | $\begin{array}{llllllll}0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0\end{array}$ | 31 |

## Binary counter: aggregate method

Starting from the zero counter, in a sequence of $n$ INCREMENT operations:

- Bit 0 flips $n$ times.
- Bit 1 flips $\lfloor n / 2\rfloor$ times.
- Bit 2 flips $\lfloor n / 4\rfloor$ times.
- ...

Theorem. Starting from the zero counter, a sequence of $n$ InCREMENT operations flips $O(n)$ bits.
Pf.

- Bit $j$ flips $\left\lfloor n / 2^{j}\right\rfloor$ times.
- The total number of bits flipped is $\sum_{j=0}^{k-1}\left\lfloor\frac{n}{2^{j}}\right\rfloor<n \sum_{j=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{2^{j}}$
$=2 n$ -

Remark. Theorem may be false if initial counter is not zero.

## Accounting method (banker's method)

Assign (potentially) different charges to each operation.

- $D_{i}=$ data structure after $i^{\text {th }}$ operation.
can be more or less
than actual cost
- $c_{i}=$ actual cost of $i^{\text {th }}$ operation.
- $\hat{c}_{i}=$ amortized cost of $i^{\text {th }}$ operation $=$ amount we charge operation $i$.
- When $\hat{c}_{i}>c_{i}$, we store credits in data structure $D_{i}$ to pay for future ops; when $\hat{c}_{i}<c_{i}$, we consume credits in data structure $D_{i}$.
- Initial data structure $D_{0}$ starts with 0 credits.

Credit invariant. The total number of credits in the data structure $\geq 0$.

$$
\sum_{i=1} \hat{c}_{i}-\sum_{i=1} c_{i} \geq 0
$$

$\qquad$ our job is to choose suitable amortized
costs so that this invariant holds


## Accounting method (banker's method)

Assign (potentially) different charges to each operation.

- $D_{i}=$ data structure after $i^{\text {th }}$ operation.
can be more or less
than actual cost
- $c_{i}=$ actual cost of $i^{\text {th }}$ operation.
- $\hat{c}_{i}=$ amortized cost of $i^{\text {th }}$ operation $=$ amount we charge operation $i$.
- When $\hat{c}_{i}>c_{i}$, we store credits in data structure $D_{i}$ to pay for future ops; when $\hat{c}_{i}<c_{i}$, we consume credits in data structure $D_{i}$.
- Initial data structure $D_{0}$ starts with 0 credits.

Credit invariant. The total number of credits in the data structure $\geq 0$.

$$
\sum_{i=1} \hat{c}_{i}-\sum_{i=1} c_{i} \geq 0
$$

Theorem. Starting from the initial data structure $D_{0}$, the total actual cost of any sequence of $n$ operations is at most the sum of the amortized costs.
Pf. The amortized cost of the sequence of $n$ operations is: $\sum_{i=1}^{n} \hat{c}_{i} \geq \sum_{i=1}^{n} c_{i}$.
Intuition. Measure running time in terms of credits (time = money).

## Binary counter: accounting method

Credits. One credit pays for a bit flip.
Invariant. Each 1 bit has one credit; each 0 bit has zero credits.

Accounting.

- Flip bit $j$ from 0 to 1: charge 2 credits (use one and save one in bit $j$ ).



## Binary counter: accounting method

Credits. One credit pays for a bit flip.
Invariant. Each 1 bit has one credit; each 0 bit has zero credits.

Accounting.

- Flip bit $j$ from 0 to 1 : charge 2 credits (use one and save one in bit $j$ ).
- Flip bit $j$ from 1 to 0 : pay for it with the 1 credit saved in bit $j$.
increment



## Binary counter: accounting method

Credits. One credit pays for a bit flip.
Invariant. Each 1 bit has one credit; each 0 bit has zero credits.

Accounting.

- Flip bit $j$ from 0 to 1 : charge 2 credits (use one and save one in bit $j$ ).
- Flip bit $j$ from 1 to 0 : pay for it with the 1 credit saved in bit $j$.



## Binary counter: accounting method

Credits. One credit pays for a bit flip.
Invariant. Each 1 bit has one credit; each 0 bit has zero credits.

## Accounting.

- Flip bit $j$ from 0 to 1 : charge 2 credits (use one and save one in bit $j$ ).
- Flip bit $j$ from 1 to $0:$ pay for it with the 1 credit saved in bit $j$.

Theorem. Starting from the zero counter, a sequence of $n$ INCREMENT operations flips $O(n)$ bits.
Pf.

- Each Increment operation flips at most one 0 bit to a 1 bit, so the amortized cost per InCREMENT $\leq 2$.
- Invariant $\Rightarrow$ number of credits in data structure $\geq 0$.
- Total actual cost of $n$ operations $\leq$ sum of amortized costs $\leq 2 n$. -


## Potential method (physicist's method)

Potential function. $\Phi\left(D_{i}\right)$ maps each data structure $D_{i}$ to a real number s.t.:

- $\Phi\left(D_{0}\right)=0$.
- $\Phi\left(D_{i}\right) \geq 0$ for each data structure $D_{i}$.

Actual and amortized costs.

- $c_{i}=$ actual cost of $i^{\text {th }}$ operation.
- $\hat{c}_{i}=c_{i}+\Phi\left(D_{i}\right)-\Phi\left(D_{i-1}\right)=$ amortized cost of $i^{t h}$ operation.


## Potential method (physicist's method)

Potential function. $\Phi\left(D_{i}\right)$ maps each data structure $D_{i}$ to a real number s.t.:

- $\Phi\left(D_{0}\right)=0$.
- $\Phi\left(D_{i}\right) \geq 0$ for each data structure $D_{i}$.

Actual and amortized costs.

- $c_{i}=$ actual cost of $i^{\text {th }}$ operation.
- $\hat{c}_{i}=c_{i}+\Phi\left(D_{i}\right)-\Phi\left(D_{i-1}\right)=$ amortized cost of $i^{t h}$ operation.

Theorem. Starting from the initial data structure $D_{0}$, the total actual cost of any sequence of $n$ operations is at most the sum of the amortized costs. Pf. The amortized cost of the sequence of operations is:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\sum_{i=1}^{n} \hat{c}_{i} & =\sum_{i=1}^{n}\left(c_{i}+\Phi\left(D_{i}\right)-\Phi\left(D_{i-1}\right)\right) \\
& =\sum_{i=1}^{n} c_{i}+\Phi\left(D_{n}\right)-\Phi\left(D_{0}\right) \\
& \geq \sum_{i=1}^{n} c_{i}
\end{aligned}
$$

## Binary counter: potential method

Potential function. Let $\Phi(D)=$ number of 1 bits in the binary counter $D$.

- $\Phi\left(D_{0}\right)=0$.
- $\Phi\left(D_{i}\right) \geq 0$ for each $D_{i}$.

| 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |

## Binary counter: potential method

Potential function. Let $\Phi(D)=$ number of 1 bits in the binary counter $D$.

- $\Phi\left(D_{0}\right)=0$.
- $\Phi\left(D_{i}\right) \geq 0$ for each $D_{i}$.

| 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |

## Binary counter: potential method

Potential function. Let $\Phi(D)=$ number of 1 bits in the binary counter $D$.

- $\Phi\left(D_{0}\right)=0$.
- $\Phi\left(D_{i}\right) \geq 0$ for each $D_{i}$.

| 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |  |

## Binary counter: potential method

Potential function. Let $\Phi(D)=$ number of 1 bits in the binary counter $D$.

- $\Phi\left(D_{0}\right)=0$.
- $\Phi\left(D_{i}\right) \geq 0$ for each $D_{i}$.

Theorem. Starting from the zero counter, a sequence of $n$ InCREMENT operations flips $O(n)$ bits.

Pf.

- Suppose that the $i^{\text {th }}$ INCREMENT operation flips $t_{i}$ bits from 1 to 0 .
- The actual cost $c_{i} \leq t_{i}+1 . \longleftarrow \begin{gathered}\text { operation flips at most one bit from } 0 \text { to } 1 \\ \text { (no bits flipped to } 1 \text { when counter overflows) }\end{gathered}$
- The amortized cost $\hat{c}_{i}=c_{i}+\Phi\left(D_{i}\right)-\Phi\left(D_{i-1}\right)$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \leq c_{i}+1-t_{i} \longleftarrow \text { potential decreases by } 1 \text { for } t_{i} \text { bits flipped from } 1 \text { to } 0 \\
& \leq 2 .
\end{aligned} \quad \text { and increases by } 1 \text { for bit flipped from } 0 \text { to } 10
$$

- Total actual cost of $n$ operations $\leq$ sum of amortized costs $\leq 2 n$. -


## Famous potential functions

Fibonacci heaps. $\Phi(H)=2 \operatorname{trees}(H)+2 \operatorname{marks}(H)$

Splay trees. $\quad \Phi(T)=\sum_{x \in T}\left\lfloor\log _{2} \operatorname{size}(x)\right\rfloor$

Move-to-front. $\Phi(L)=2$ inversions $\left(L, L^{*}\right)$

Preflow-push. $\Phi(f)=\sum_{v: \text { excess }(v)>0} \operatorname{height}(v)$

Red-black trees. $\quad \Phi(T)=\sum_{x \in T} w(x)$

$$
w(x)= \begin{cases}0 & \text { if } x \text { is red } \\ 1 & \text { if } x \text { is black and has no red children } \\ 0 & \text { if } x \text { is black and has one red child } \\ 2 & \text { if } x \text { is black and has two red children }\end{cases}
$$



## Amortized Analysis

, binary counter

- multi-pop stack
- dynamic table

Section 17.4

## Multipop stack

Goal. Support operations on a set of elements:

- $\operatorname{Push}(S, x)$ : add element $x$ to stack $S$.
- $\operatorname{POP}(S)$ : remove and return the most-recently added element.
- Multi-Pop( $S, k$ ): remove the most-recently added $k$ elements.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \operatorname{MULTI-POP}(S, k) \\
& \text { FOR } i=1 \text { TO } k \\
& \operatorname{POP}(S) .
\end{aligned}
$$

Exceptions. We assume Pop throws an exception if stack is empty.

## Multipop stack

Goal. Support operations on a set of elements:

- $\operatorname{Push}(S, x)$ : add element $x$ to stack $S$.
- $\operatorname{POP}(S)$ : remove and return the most-recently added element.
- Multi-Pop( $S, k$ ): remove the most-recently added $k$ elements.

Theorem. Starting from an empty stack, any intermixed sequence of $n$ Push, Pop, and Multi-Pop operations takes $O\left(n^{2}\right)$ time. Pf.

- Use a singly linked list.
overly pessimistic
upper bound
- Pop and Push take $O$ (1) time each.
- Multi-Pop takes $O(n)$ time.



## Multipop stack: aggregate method

Goal. Support operations on a set of elements:

- $\operatorname{Push}(S, x)$ : add element $x$ to stack $S$.
- $\operatorname{POP}(S)$ : remove and return the most-recently added element.
- Multi-Pop( $S, k$ ): remove the most-recently added $k$ elements.

Theorem. Starting from an empty stack, any intermixed sequence of $n$ Push, POP, and Multi-Pop operations takes $O(n)$ time.

Pf.

- An element is popped at most once for each time that it is pushed.
- There are $\leq n$ Push operations.
- Thus, there are $\leq n$ POP operations (including those made within Multi-POP).


## Multipop stack: accounting method

Credits. 1 credit pays for either a Push or Pop.
Invariant. Every element on the stack has 1 credit.

## Accounting.

- Push $(S, x)$ : charge 2 credits.
- use 1 credit to pay for pushing $x$ now
- store 1 credit to pay for popping $x$ at some point in the future
- $\operatorname{PoP}(S)$ : charge 0 credits.

Theorem. Starting from an empty stack, any intermixed sequence of $n$ Push, Pop, and Multi-Pop operations takes $O(n)$ time.
Pf.

- Invariant $\Rightarrow$ number of credits in data structure $\geq 0$.
- Amortized cost per operation $\leq 2$.
- Total actual cost of $n$ operations $\leq$ sum of amortized costs $\leq 2 n$. -


## Multipop stack: potential method

Potential function. Let $\Phi(D)=$ number of elements currently on the stack.

- $\Phi\left(D_{0}\right)=0$.
- $\Phi\left(D_{i}\right) \geq 0$ for each $D_{i}$.

Theorem. Starting from an empty stack, any intermixed sequence of $n$ PUSh, POP, and MUlti-Pop operations takes $O(n)$ time.

## Pf. [Case 1: push]

- Suppose that the $i^{t h}$ operation is a Push.
- The actual cost $c_{i}=1$.
- The amortized cost $\hat{c}_{i}=c_{i}+\Phi\left(D_{i}\right)-\Phi\left(D_{i-1}\right)=1+1=2$.


## Multipop stack: potential method

Potential function. Let $\Phi(D)=$ number of elements currently on the stack.

- $\Phi\left(D_{0}\right)=0$.
- $\Phi\left(D_{i}\right) \geq 0$ for each $D_{i}$.

Theorem. Starting from an empty stack, any intermixed sequence of $n$ PUSh, POP, and MUlti-Pop operations takes $O(n)$ time.

Pf. [Case 2: pop]

- Suppose that the $i^{t h}$ operation is a Pop.
- The actual cost $c_{i}=1$.
- The amortized cost $\hat{c}_{i}=c_{i}+\Phi\left(D_{i}\right)-\Phi\left(D_{i-1}\right)=1-1=0$.


## Multipop stack: potential method

Potential function. Let $\Phi(D)=$ number of elements currently on the stack.

- $\Phi\left(D_{0}\right)=0$.
- $\Phi\left(D_{i}\right) \geq 0$ for each $D_{i}$.

Theorem. Starting from an empty stack, any intermixed sequence of $n$ PUSh, POP, and MUlti-Pop operations takes $O(n)$ time.

## Pf. [Case 3: multi-pop]

- Suppose that the $i^{\text {th }}$ operation is a Multi-POP of $k$ objects.
- The actual cost $c_{i}=k$.
- The amortized cost $\hat{c}_{i}=c_{i}+\Phi\left(D_{i}\right)-\Phi\left(D_{i-1}\right)=k-k=0$.


## Multipop stack: potential method

Potential function. Let $\Phi(D)=$ number of elements currently on the stack.

- $\Phi\left(D_{0}\right)=0$.
- $\Phi\left(D_{i}\right) \geq 0$ for each $D_{i}$.

Theorem. Starting from an empty stack, any intermixed sequence of $n$ PUSh, POP, and MUlti-Pop operations takes $O(n)$ time.

Pf. [putting everything together]

- Amortized cost $\hat{c}_{i} \leq 2$. $\longleftarrow 2$ for push; 0 for pop and multi-pop
- Sum of amortized costs $\hat{c}_{i}$ of the $n$ operations $\leq 2 n$.
- Total actual cost $\leq$ sum of amortized cost $\leq 2 n$. -
potential method theorem


## Part II

## Data stuctures

## OVERVIEW

Heaps

Disjoint-sets Data Structures

## HEAPS



## Fibonacci Heaps

- preliminaries
- insert
- extract the minimum
, decrease key
, bounding the rank
- meld and delete


## Lecture slides by Kevin Wayne

http: / / www.cs.princeton.edu/~wayne/kleinberg-tardos

## Priority queues performance cost summary

| operation | linked list | binary heap | binomial heap | Fibonacci heap <br> $\dagger$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| MAKE-HEAP | $O(1)$ | $O(1)$ | $O(1)$ | $O(1)$ |
| IS-EMPTY | $O(1)$ | $O(1)$ | $O(1)$ | $O(1)$ |
| INSERT | $O(1)$ | $O(\log n)$ | $O(\log n)$ | $O(1)$ |
| EXTRACT-MIN | $O(n)$ | $O(\log n)$ | $O(\log n)$ | $O(\log n)$ |
| DECREASE-KEY | $O(1)$ | $O(\log n)$ | $O(\log n)$ | $O(1)$ |
| DELETE | $O(1)$ | $O(\log n)$ | $O(\log n)$ | $O(\log n)$ |
| MELD | $O(1)$ | $O(n)$ | $O(\log n)$ | $O(1)$ |
| FIND-MIN | $O(n)$ | $O(1)$ | $O(\log n)$ | $O(1)$ |

$\dagger$ amortized
Ahead. $O(1)$ Insert and Decrease-Key, $O(\log n)$ Extract-Min.

Fibonacci heaps
Theorem. [Fredman-Tarjan 1986] Starting from an empty Fibonacci heap, any sequence of $m$ Insert, Extract-Min, and Decrease-Key operations involving $n$ INSERT operations takes $O(m+n \log n)$ time.

## History.

- Ingenious data structure and application of amortized analysis.
- Original motivation: improve Dijkstra’s shortest path algorithm from $O(m \log n)$ to $O(m+n \log n)$.
- Also improved best-known bounds for all-pairs shortest paths, assignment problem, minimum spanning trees.


## Fibonacci heap: structure

- Set of heap-ordered trees.
heap-ordered tree


23
7


Fibonacci heap: structure

- Set of heap-ordered trees.
- Set of marked nodes.


Fibonacci heap: structure

Heap representation.

- Store a pointer to the minimum node.
- Maintain tree roots in a circular, doubly-linked list.


Fibonacci heap: representation

Node representation. Each node stores:

- A pointer to its parent.
- A pointer to any of its children.
- A pointer to its left and right siblings.
- Its rank = number of children.
- Whether it is marked.


Fibonacci heap: representation

Operations we can do in constant time:

- Determine rank of a node.
- Find the minimum element.
- Merge two root lists together.
- Add or remove a node from the root list.
- Remove a subtree and merge into root list.
- Link the root of a one tree to root of another tree.


Fibonacci heap: notation


Fibonacci heap: potential function

Potential function.

$$
\Phi(H)=\operatorname{trees}(H)+2 \cdot \operatorname{marks}(H)
$$




Section 19.2

## Fibonacci Heaps

p preliminaries

- insert
, extract the minimum
- decrease key
- hounding the rank
> meld and delete

Fibonacci heap: insert

- Create a new singleton tree.
- Add to root list; update min pointer (if necessary).
insert 21

21


Fibonacci heap: insert

- Create a new singleton tree.
- Add to root list; update min pointer (if necessary).
insert 21


Fibonacci heap: insert analysis

Actual cost. $c_{i}=O(1)$.

Change in potential. $\Delta \Phi=\Phi\left(H_{i}\right)-\Phi\left(H_{i-1}\right)=+1 . \longleftarrow \begin{gathered}\text { one more tree; } \\ \text { no change in marks }\end{gathered}$

Amortized cost. $\hat{c}_{i}=c_{i}+\Delta \Phi=O(1)$.

$$
\Phi(H)=\operatorname{trees}(H)+2 \cdot \operatorname{marks}(H)
$$




## Fibonacci Heaps

preliminaries
> insert

- extract the minimum
- decrease key
- bounding the rank
- meld and delete

Section 19.2

## Linking operation

Useful primitive. Combine two trees $T_{1}$ and $T_{2}$ of rank $k$.

- Make larger root be a child of smaller root.
- Resulting tree $T^{\prime}$ has rank $k+1$.

still heap-ordered

Fibonacci heap: extract the minimum

- Delete min; meld its children into root list; update min.
- Consolidate trees so that no two roots have same rank.
$\min$


Fibonacci heap: extract the minimum

- Delete min; meld its children into root list; update min.
- Consolidate trees so that no two roots have same rank.


Fibonacci heap: extract the minimum

- Delete min; meld its children into root list; update min.
- Consolidate trees so that no two roots have same rank.


Fibonacci heap: extract the minimum

- Delete min; meld its children into root list; update min.
- Consolidate trees so that no two roots have same rank.


Fibonacci heap: extract the minimum

- Delete min; meld its children into root list; update min.
- Consolidate trees so that no two roots have same rank.


Fibonacci heap: extract the minimum

- Delete min; meld its children into root list; update min.
- Consolidate trees so that no two roots have same rank.


Fibonacci heap: extract the minimum

- Delete min; meld its children into root list; update min.
- Consolidate trees so that no two roots have same rank.


Fibonacci heap: extract the minimum

- Delete min; meld its children into root list; update min.
- Consolidate trees so that no two roots have same rank.


Fibonacci heap: extract the minimum

- Delete min; meld its children into root list; update min.
- Consolidate trees so that no two roots have same rank.
rank
link 24 to 7


Fibonacci heap: extract the minimum

- Delete min; meld its children into root list; update min.
- Consolidate trees so that no two roots have same rank.


Fibonacci heap: extract the minimum

- Delete min; meld its children into root list; update min.
- Consolidate trees so that no two roots have same rank.


Fibonacci heap: extract the minimum

- Delete min; meld its children into root list; update min.
- Consolidate trees so that no two roots have same rank.


Fibonacci heap: extract the minimum

- Delete min; meld its children into root list; update min.
- Consolidate trees so that no two roots have same rank.
link 41 to 18


Fibonacci heap: extract the minimum

- Delete min; meld its children into root list; update min.
- Consolidate trees so that no two roots have same rank.


Fibonacci heap: extract the minimum

- Delete min; meld its children into root list; update min.
- Consolidate trees so that no two roots have same rank.


Fibonacci heap: extract the minimum

- Delete min; meld its children into root list; update min.
- Consolidate trees so that no two roots have same rank.

```
stop (no two trees have same rank)
```



Fibonacci heap: extract the minimum analysis

Actual cost. $\quad c_{i}=O(\operatorname{rank}(H))+O(\operatorname{trees}(H))$.

- $O(\operatorname{rank}(H))$ to meld min's children into root list. $\longleftarrow \leq$ rank $(H)$ children
- $O(\operatorname{rank}(H))+O(\operatorname{trees}(H))$ to update min. $\longleftarrow \leq \operatorname{rank}(H)+\operatorname{trees}(H)-1$ root nodes
- $O(\operatorname{rank}(H))+O(\operatorname{trees}(H))$ to consolidate trees
$\longleftarrow$ number of roots decreases by 1 after each linking operation

Change in potential. $\Delta \Phi \leq \operatorname{rank}\left(H^{\prime}\right)+1-\operatorname{trees}(H)$.

- No new nodes become marked.
- $\operatorname{trees}\left(H^{\prime}\right) \leq \operatorname{rank}\left(H^{\prime}\right)+1 . \longleftarrow$ no two trees have same rank after consolidation

Amortized cost. $O(\log n)$.

- $\hat{c}_{i}=c_{i}+\Delta \Phi=O(\operatorname{rank}(H))+O\left(\operatorname{rank}\left(H^{\prime}\right)\right)$.
- The rank of a Fibonacci heap with $n$ elements is $O(\log n)$.

$$
\Phi(H)=\operatorname{trees}(H)+2 \cdot \operatorname{marks}(H)
$$

Fibonacci heap vs. binomial heaps

Observation. If only InSERT and EXTRACT-MIN operations, then all trees are binomial trees.
we link only trees of equal rank


Binomial heap property. This implies $\operatorname{rank}(H) \leq \log _{2} n$.

Fibonacci heap property. Our Decrease-Key implementation will not preserve this property, but we will implement it in such a way that $\operatorname{rank}(H) \leq \log _{\phi} n$.


## Fibonacci Heaps

preliminaries

- insert
- axtract the minimum
- decrease key
b bounding the rank
- meld and delete

Section 19.3

Fibonacci heap: decrease key

Intuition for deceasing the key of node $x$.

- If heap-order is not violated, decrease the key of $x$.
- Otherwise, cut tree rooted at $x$ and meld into root list.
decrease-key of $x$ from 30 to 7


Fibonacci heap: decrease key

Intuition for deceasing the key of node $x$.

- If heap-order is not violated, decrease the key of $x$.
- Otherwise, cut tree rooted at $x$ and meld into root list.
decrease-key of $x$ from 23 to 5


Fibonacci heap: decrease key

Intuition for deceasing the key of node $x$.

- If heap-order is not violated, decrease the key of $x$.
- Otherwise, cut tree rooted at $x$ and meld into root list.


Fibonacci heap: decrease key

Intuition for deceasing the key of node $x$.

- If heap-order is not violated, decrease the key of $x$.
- Otherwise, cut tree rooted at $x$ and meld into root list.
- Problem: number of nodes not exponential in rank.


Fibonacci heap: decrease key

Intuition for deceasing the key of node $x$.

- If heap-order is not violated, decrease the key of $x$.
- Otherwise, cut tree rooted at $x$ and meld into root list.
- Solution: as soon as a node has its second child cut, cut it off also and meld into root list (and unmark it).


Fibonacci heap: decrease key

Case 1. [heap order not violated]

- Decrease key of $x$.
- Change heap min pointer (if necessary).
decrease-key of $x$ from 46 to 29


Fibonacci heap: decrease key

Case 1. [heap order not violated]

- Decrease key of $x$.
- Change heap min pointer (if necessary).
decrease-key of $x$ from 46 to 29


Fibonacci heap: decrease key

Case 2a. [heap order violated]

- Decrease key of $x$.
- Cut tree rooted at $x$, meld into root list, and unmark.
- If parent $p$ of $x$ is unmarked (hasn't yet lost a child), mark it; Otherwise, cut $p$, meld into root list, and unmark (and do so recursively for all ancestors that lose a second child).
decrease-key of x from 29 to 15


Fibonacci heap: decrease key

Case 2a. [heap order violated]

- Decrease key of $x$.
- Cut tree rooted at $x$, meld into root list, and unmark.
- If parent $p$ of $x$ is unmarked (hasn't yet lost a child), mark it; Otherwise, cut $p$, meld into root list, and unmark (and do so recursively for all ancestors that lose a second child).
decrease-key of x from 29 to 15


Fibonacci heap: decrease key

Case 2a. [heap order violated]

- Decrease key of $x$.
- Cut tree rooted at $x$, meld into root list, and unmark.
- If parent $p$ of $x$ is unmarked (hasn't yet lost a child), mark it; Otherwise, cut $p$, meld into root list, and unmark (and do so recursively for all ancestors that lose a second child).
decrease-key of x from 29 to 15


Fibonacci heap: decrease key

Case 2a. [heap order violated]

- Decrease key of $x$.
- Cut tree rooted at $x$, meld into root list, and unmark.
- If parent $p$ of $x$ is unmarked (hasn't yet lost a child), mark it; Otherwise, cut $p$, meld into root list, and unmark (and do so recursively for all ancestors that lose a second child).
decrease-key of x from 29 to 15


Fibonacci heap: decrease key

Case 2a. [heap order violated]

- Decrease key of $x$.
- Cut tree rooted at $x$, meld into root list, and unmark.
- If parent $p$ of $x$ is unmarked (hasn't yet lost a child), mark it; Otherwise, cut $p$, meld into root list, and unmark (and do so recursively for all ancestors that lose a second child).
decrease-key of x from 29 to 15


Fibonacci heap: decrease key

Case 2b. [heap order violated]

- Decrease key of $x$.
- Cut tree rooted at $x$, meld into root list, and unmark.
- If parent $p$ of $x$ is unmarked (hasn't yet lost a child), mark it; Otherwise, cut $p$, meld into root list, and unmark (and do so recursively for all ancestors that lose a second child).
decrease-key of $x$ from 35 to 5


Fibonacci heap: decrease key

Case 2b. [heap order violated]

- Decrease key of $x$.
- Cut tree rooted at $x$, meld into root list, and unmark.
- If parent $p$ of $x$ is unmarked (hasn't yet lost a child), mark it; Otherwise, cut $p$, meld into root list, and unmark (and do so recursively for all ancestors that lose a second child).
decrease-key of $x$ from 35 to 5


Fibonacci heap: decrease key

Case 2b. [heap order violated]

- Decrease key of $x$.
- Cut tree rooted at $x$, meld into root list, and unmark.
- If parent $p$ of $x$ is unmarked (hasn't yet lost a child), mark it; Otherwise, cut $p$, meld into root list, and unmark (and do so recursively for all ancestors that lose a second child).
decrease-key of $x$ from 35 to 5


Fibonacci heap: decrease key

Case 2b. [heap order violated]

- Decrease key of $x$.
- Cut tree rooted at $x$, meld into root list, and unmark.
- If parent $p$ of $x$ is unmarked (hasn't yet lost a child), mark it;

Otherwise, cut $p$, meld into root list, and unmark
(and do so recursively for all ancestors that lose a second child).
decrease-key of $x$ from 35 to 5


Fibonacci heap: decrease key

Case 2b. [heap order violated]

- Decrease key of $x$.
- Cut tree rooted at $x$, meld into root list, and unmark.
- If parent $p$ of $x$ is unmarked (hasn't yet lost a child), mark it;

Otherwise, cut $p$, meld into root list, and unmark
(and do so recursively for all ancestors that lose a second child).
decrease-key of $x$ from 35 to 5


Fibonacci heap: decrease key

Case 2b. [heap order violated]

- Decrease key of $x$.
- Cut tree rooted at $x$, meld into root list, and unmark.
- If parent $p$ of $x$ is unmarked (hasn't yet lost a child), mark it; Otherwise, cut $p$, meld into root list, and unmark
(and do so recursively for all ancestors that lose a second child).
decrease-key of $x$ from 35 to 5


Fibonacci heap: decrease key

Case 2b. [heap order violated]

- Decrease key of $x$.
- Cut tree rooted at $x$, meld into root list, and unmark.
- If parent $p$ of $x$ is unmarked (hasn't yet lost a child), mark it; Otherwise, cut $p$, meld into root list, and unmark
(and do so recursively for all ancestors that lose a second child).
decrease-key of $x$ from 35 to 5


Fibonacci heap: decrease key analysis

Actual cost. $c_{i}=O(c)$, where $c$ is the number of cuts.

- $O(1)$ time for changing the key.
- $O(1)$ time for each of $c$ cuts, plus melding into root list.

Change in potential. $\Delta \Phi=O(1)-c$.

- $\operatorname{trees}\left(H^{\prime}\right)=\operatorname{trees}(H)+c$.
- $\operatorname{marks}\left(H^{\prime}\right) \leq \operatorname{marks}(H)-c+2 . \longleftarrow \quad \begin{aligned} & \text { each cut (except first) unmarks a node } \\ & \text { last cut may or may not mark a node }\end{aligned}$
- $\Delta \Phi \leq c+2 \cdot(-c+2)=4-c$.

Amortized cost. $\hat{c}_{i}=c_{i}+\Delta \Phi=O(1)$.

$$
\Phi(H)=\operatorname{trees}(H)+2 \cdot \operatorname{marks}(H)
$$



Section 19.4

## Fibonacci Heaps

preliminaries

- insert
- axtract the minimum
> decrease key
- bounding the rank
> meld and delete


## Analysis summary

Insert. $\quad O(1)$.
Delete-min. $\quad O(\operatorname{rank}(H))$ amortized.
Decrease-key. $O(1)$ amortized.

Fibonacci lemma. Let $H$ be a Fibonacci heap with $n$ elements.
Then, $\operatorname{rank}(H)=O(\log n)$.
number of nodes is
exponential in rank

## Bounding the rank

Lemma 1. Fix a point in time. Let $x$ be a node of rank $k$, and let $y_{1}, \ldots, y_{k}$ denote its current children in the order in which they were linked to $x$. Then:

$$
\operatorname{rank}\left(y_{i}\right) \geq \begin{cases}0 & \text { if } i=1 \\ i-2 & \text { if } i \geq 2\end{cases}
$$



Pf.

- When $y_{i}$ was linked into $x, x$ had at least $i-1$ children $y_{1}, \ldots, y_{i-1}$.
- Since only trees of equal rank are linked, at that time $\operatorname{rank}\left(y_{i}\right)=\operatorname{rank}(x) \geq i-1$.
- Since then, $y_{i}$ has lost at most one child (or $y_{i}$ would have been cut).
- Thus, right now $\operatorname{rank}\left(y_{i}\right) \geq i-2$. -


## Bounding the rank

Lemma 1. Fix a point in time. Let $x$ be a node of rank $k$, and let $y_{1}, \ldots, y_{k}$ denote its current children in the order in which they were linked to $x$. Then:

$$
\operatorname{rank}\left(y_{i}\right) \geq \begin{cases}0 & \text { if } i=1 \\ i-2 & \text { if } i \geq 2\end{cases}
$$



Def. Let $T_{k}$ be smallest possible tree of rank $k$ satisfying property.


$$
F_{2}=1
$$

$$
F_{3}=2
$$

$$
F_{4}=3
$$

$$
F_{5}=5
$$

## Bounding the rank

Lemma 1. Fix a point in time. Let $x$ be a node of rank $k$, and let $y_{1}, \ldots, y_{k}$ denote its current children in the order in which they were linked to $x$. Then:

$$
\operatorname{rank}\left(y_{i}\right) \geq \begin{cases}0 & \text { if } i=1 \\ i-2 & \text { if } i \geq 2\end{cases}
$$



Def. Let $T_{k}$ be smallest possible tree of rank $k$ satisfying property.


## Bounding the rank

Lemma 2. Let $s_{k}$ be minimum number of elements in any Fibonacci heap of rank $k$. Then $s_{k} \geq F_{k+2}$, where $F_{k}$ is the $k^{t h}$ Fibonacci number.

## Pf. [by strong induction on k]

- Base cases: $s_{0}=1$ and $s_{1}=2$.
- Inductive hypothesis: assume $s_{i} \geq F_{i+2}$ for $i=0, \ldots, k-1$.
- As in Lemma 1 , let let $y_{1}, \ldots, y_{k}$ denote its current children in the order in which they were linked to $x$.

$$
\begin{array}{rlrl}
s_{k} & \geq 1+1+\left(s_{0}+s_{1}+\ldots+s_{k-2}\right) & & \text { (Lemma 1) } \\
& \geq\left(1+F_{1}\right)+F_{2}+F_{3}+\ldots+F_{k} & & \text { (inductive hypothesis) } \\
& =F_{k+2} . & \text { (Fibonacci fact 1) }
\end{array}
$$

## Bounding the rank

Fibonacci lemma. Let $H$ be a Fibonacci heap with $n$ elements.
Then, $\operatorname{rank}(H) \leq \log _{\phi} n$, where $\phi$ is the golden ratio $=(1+\sqrt{ } 5) / 2 \approx 1.618$.

Pf.

- Let $H$ is a Fibonacci heap with $n$ elements and rank $k$.
- Then $n \geq F_{k+2} \geq \phi^{k}$.

- Taking logs, we obtain $\operatorname{rank}(H)=k \leq \log _{\phi} n$. -

Fibonacci fact 1

Def. The Fibonacci sequence is: $0,1,1,2,3,5,8,13,21, \ldots$

$$
F_{k}= \begin{cases}0 & \text { if } k=0 \\ 1 & \text { if } k=1 \\ F_{k-1}+F_{k-2} & \text { if } k \geq 2\end{cases}
$$

Fibonacci fact 1. For all integers $k \geq 0, F_{k+2}=1+F_{0}+F_{1}+\ldots+F_{k}$.
Pf. [by induction on $k$ ]

- Base case: $F_{2}=1+F_{0}=2$.
- Inductive hypothesis: assume $F_{k+1}=1+F_{0}+F_{1}+\ldots+F_{k-1}$.

$$
\begin{aligned}
F_{k+2} & =F_{k}+F_{k+1} \\
& =F_{k}+\left(1+F_{0}+F_{1}+\ldots+F_{k-1}\right) \\
& =1+F_{0}+F_{1}+\ldots+F_{k-1}+F_{k} .
\end{aligned}
$$

Fibonacci fact 2

Def. The Fibonacci sequence is: $0,1,1,2,3,5,8,13,21, \ldots$

$$
F_{k}= \begin{cases}0 & \text { if } k=0 \\ 1 & \text { if } k=1 \\ F_{k-1}+F_{k-2} & \text { if } k \geq 2\end{cases}
$$

Fibonacci fact 2. $\quad F_{k+2} \geq \phi^{k}$, where $\phi=(1+\sqrt{ } 5) / 2 \approx 1.618$.
Pf. [by induction on $k$ ]

- Base cases: $F_{2}=1 \geq 1, F_{3}=2 \geq \phi$.
- Inductive hypotheses: assume $F_{k} \geq \phi^{k}$ and $F_{k+1} \geq \phi^{k+1}$

$$
\begin{aligned}
F_{k+2} & =F_{k}+F_{k+1} & & \text { (definition) } \\
& \geq \phi^{k-1}+\phi^{k-2} & & \text { (inductive hypothesis) } \\
& =\phi^{k-2}(1+\phi) & & \text { (algebra) } \\
& =\phi^{k-2} \phi^{2} & & \left(\phi^{2}=\phi+1\right) \\
& =\phi^{k} . & & \text { (algebra) }
\end{aligned}
$$



Section 19.2, 19.3

## Fibonacci Heaps

, preliminaries

- insert
- axtract the minimum
- decrease key
> bounding the rank
- meld and delete

Fibonacci heap: meld

Meld. Combine two Fibonacci heaps (destroying old heaps).

Recall. Root lists are circular, doubly-linked lists.


Fibonacci heap: meld
Meld. Combine two Fibonacci heaps (destroying old heaps).
Recall. Root lists are circular, doubly-linked lists.


Fibonacci heap: meld analysis

Actual cost. $c_{i}=O(1)$.
Change in potential. $\Delta \Phi=0$.
Amortized cost. $\hat{c}_{i}=c_{i}+\Delta \Phi=O(1)$.

$$
\Phi(H)=\operatorname{trees}(H)+2 \cdot \operatorname{marks}(H)
$$



Fibonacci heap: delete
Delete. Given a handle to an element $x$, delete it from heap $H$.

- Decrease-Key $(H, x,-\infty)$.
- Extract-Min( $H$ ).

Amortized cost. $\quad \hat{c}_{i}=O(\operatorname{rank}(H))$.

- $O(1)$ amortized for Decrease-Key.
- $O(\operatorname{rank}(H)$ ) amortized for Extract-Min.

$$
\Phi(H)=\operatorname{trees}(H)+2 \cdot \operatorname{marks}(H)
$$

## Priority queues performance cost summary

| operation | linked list | binary heap | binomial heap | Fibonacci heap <br> $\dagger$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| MAKE-HEAP | $O(1)$ | $O(1)$ | $O(1)$ | $O(1)$ |
| IS-EMPTY | $O(1)$ | $O(1)$ | $O(1)$ | $O(1)$ |
| INSERT | $O(1)$ | $O(\log n)$ | $O(\log n)$ | $O(1)$ |
| EXTRACT-MIN | $O(n)$ | $O(\log n)$ | $O(\log n)$ | $O(\log n)$ |
| DECREASE-KEY | $O(1)$ | $O(\log n)$ | $O(\log n)$ | $O(1)$ |
| DELETE | $O(1)$ | $O(\log n)$ | $O(\log n)$ | $O(\log n)$ |
| MELD | $O(1)$ | $O(n)$ | $O(\log n)$ | $O(1)$ |
| FIND-MIN | $O(n)$ | $O(1)$ | $O(\log n)$ | $O(1)$ |

$\dagger$ amortized
Accomplished. $O(1)$ Insert and Decrease-Key, $O(\log n)$ Extract-Min.

## Heaps of heaps

- b-heaps.
- Fat heaps.
- 2-3 heaps.
- Leaf heaps.
- Thin heaps.
- Skew heaps.
- Splay heaps.
- Weak heaps.
- Leftist heaps.
- Quake heaps.
- Pairing heaps.

- Violation heaps.
- Run-relaxed heaps.
- Rank-pairing heaps.
- Skew-pairing heaps.
- Rank-relaxed heaps.
- Lazy Fibonacci heaps.

DISJOINT-SETS DATA STRUCTURES


## UNION-FIND

> naïve linking

- link-by-size
- link-by-rank
- path compression
- link-by-rank with path compression
> context

Lecture slides by Kevin Wayne
Copyright © 2005 Pearson-Addison Wesley
http://www.cs.princeton.edu/~wayne/kleinberg-tardos

## Disjoint-sets data type

Goal. Support three operations on a collection of disjoint sets.

- MaKe-Set $(x)$ : create a new set containing only element $x$.
- $\operatorname{FIND}(x)$ : return a canonical element in the set containing $x$.
- UNION $(x, y)$ : replace the sets containing $x$ and $y$ with their union.


## Performance parameters.

- $m=$ number of calls to MAKe-Set, Find, and Union.
- $n=$ number of elements $=$ number of calls to MAKE-SET.

Dynamic connectivity. Given an initially empty graph $G$, support three operations.

- AdD-Node(u): add node $u$.
- $\operatorname{AdD}-\operatorname{EdGE}(u, v)$ : add an edge between nodes $u$ and $v$.
$\longleftarrow 1$ MAKE-Set operation
$\longleftarrow 1$ UNION operation
$\longleftarrow 2$ FInD operations


## Disjoint-sets data type: applications

Original motivation. Compiling Equivalence, Dimension, and Common statements in Fortran.

An Improved Equivalence<br>Algorithm<br>Bernard A. Galler and Michael J. Fisher<br>University of Michigan, Ann Arbor, Michigan

An algorithm for assigning storage on the basis of EQUIVALENCE, DIMENSION and COMMON declarations is presented. The algorithm is based on a tree structure, and has reduced computation time by 40 percent over a previously published algorithm by identifying all equivalence classes with one scan of the EQUIVALENCE declarations. The method is applicable in any problem in which it is necessary to identify equivalence classes, given the element pairs defining the equivalence relation.

Note. This 1964 paper also introduced key data structure for problem.

## Disjoint-sets data type: applications

Applications.

- Percolation.
- Kruskal's algorithm.
- Connected components.
- Computing LCAs in trees.
- Computing dominators in digraphs.
- Equivalence of finite state automata.
- Checking flow graphs for reducibility.
- Hoshen-Kopelman algorithm in physics.
- Hinley-Milner polymorphic type inference.
- Morphological attribute openings and closings.
- Matlab's Bw-Label function for image processing.
- Compiling Equivalence, Dimension and Common statements in Fortran.
- ...



## UNION-FIND

- naïve linking
- link-by-size
- link-by-rank
- path compression
- link-by-rank with path compression
- context


## Disjoint-sets data structure

Parent-link representation. Represent each set as a tree of elements.

- Each element has an explicit parent pointer in the tree.
- The root serves as the canonical element (and points to itself).
- Find $(x)$ : find the root of the tree containing $x$.
- UNION $(x, y)$ : merge trees containing $x$ and $y$.

Union $(3,5)$


## Disjoint-sets data structure

Parent-link representation. Represent each set as a tree of elements.

- Each element has an explicit parent pointer in the tree.
- The root serves as the canonical element (and points to itself).
- $\operatorname{Find}(x)$ : find the root of the tree containing $x$.
- UNION $(x, y)$ : merge trees containing $x$ and $y$.

Union(3, 5)


## Disjoint-sets data structure

Array representation. Represent each set as a tree of elements.

- Allocate an array parent[] of length $n . \longleftarrow$ must know number of elements $n$ a priori
- parent $[i]=j$ means parent of element $i$ is element $j$.


Note. For brevity, we suppress arrows and self loops in figures.

## Naïve linking

Naïve linking. Link root of first tree to root of second tree.

## UNION(5, 3)



## Naïve linking

Naïve linking. Link root of first tree to root of second tree.

## UNION(5, 3)



## Naïve linking

Naïve linking. Link root of first tree to root of second tree.

```
MAKE-SET(x)
parent[x] \leftarrow x.
\(\operatorname{FIND}(x)\)
While \((x \neq \operatorname{parent}[x])\)
\[
x \leftarrow \operatorname{parent}[x] .
\]
RETURN \(x\).
```

$\operatorname{UNion}(x, y)$
$r \leftarrow \operatorname{FiND}(x)$.
$s \leftarrow \operatorname{FiND}(y)$.
parent $[r] \leftarrow s$.

## Naïve linking: analysis

Theorem. Using naïve linking, a UNION or FIND operation can take $\Theta(n)$ time in the worst case, where $n$ is the number of elements.

- In the worst case, FIND takes time proportional to the height of the tree.
- Height of the tree is $n-1$ after the sequence of union operations: $\operatorname{UNION}(1,2), \operatorname{UNION}(2,3), \ldots, \operatorname{UNION}(n-1, n)$.

height $=\mathbf{n - 1}$




## UNION-FIND

> naïve linking

- link-by-size
, link-by-rank
- path compression
- link-hy-rank with nath compression
- context


## Link-by-size

Link-by-size. Maintain a tree size (number of nodes) for each root node. Link root of smaller tree to root of larger tree (breaking ties arbitrarily).

## UNION(5, 3)



## Link-by-size

Link-by-size. Maintain a tree size (number of nodes) for each root node. Link root of smaller tree to root of larger tree (breaking ties arbitrarily).

## UNION(5, 3)



## Link-by-size

Link-by-size. Maintain a tree size (number of nodes) for each root node. Link root of smaller tree to root of larger tree (breaking ties arbitrarily).

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \operatorname{UnION}(x, y) \\
& r \leftarrow \operatorname{FIND}(x) . \\
& s \leftarrow \operatorname{FIND}(y) . \\
& \text { IF }(r=s) \text { RETURN. } \\
& \text { ELSE IF }(\text { size }[r]>\operatorname{size}[s]) \\
& \quad \text { parent }[s] \leftarrow r . \\
& \quad \text { size }[r] \leftarrow \operatorname{size}[r]+\operatorname{size}[s] . \\
& \text { ELSE } \\
& \quad \text { parent }[r] \leftarrow s . \\
& \text { size }[s] \leftarrow \text { size }[r]+\operatorname{size}[s] .
\end{aligned}
$$

$\operatorname{MAKE}-\operatorname{Set}(x)$
parent $[x] \leftarrow x$.
size $[x] \leftarrow 1$.
$\operatorname{Find}(x)$
While ( $x \neq$ parent $[x]$ )

$$
x \leftarrow \operatorname{parent}[x] .
$$

RETURN $x$.

## Link-by-size: analysis

Property. Using link-by-size, for every root node $r$ : size $[r] \geq 2$ height $(r)$. Pf. [ by induction on number of links ]

- Base case: singleton tree has size 1 and height 0 .
- Inductive hypothesis: assume true after first $i$ links.
- Tree rooted at $r$ changes only when a smaller (or equal) size tree rooted at $s$ is linked into $r$.
- Case 1.[height $(r)>\operatorname{height}(s)] \quad \operatorname{size} e^{\prime}[r]>\operatorname{size}[r]$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \geq 2 \text { height }(r) \longleftarrow \text { inductive hypothesis } \\
& =2 \text { height }^{\prime}(r) .
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{gathered}
\text { size }=8 \\
(\text { height }=2)
\end{gathered}
$$



## Link-by-size: analysis

Property. Using link-by-size, for every root node $r$ : size $[r] \geq 2$ height $(r)$. Pf. [ by induction on number of links ]

- Base case: singleton tree has size 1 and height 0 .
- Inductive hypothesis: assume true after first $i$ links.
- Tree rooted at $r$ changes only when a smaller (or equal) size tree rooted at $s$ is linked into $r$.
- Case 2. [height $(r) \leq \operatorname{height}(s)] \quad \operatorname{size}^{\prime}[r]=\operatorname{size}[r]+\operatorname{size}[s]$

$$
\text { size }=6
$$

(height = 1)

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \geq 2 \operatorname{size}[s] \quad \text { link-by-size } \\
& \geq 2 \cdot 2 \text { height }(s) \longleftarrow \text { inductive hypothesis } \\
& =2 \text { height }(s)+1 \\
& =2 \text { height }(r) .
\end{aligned}
$$

## Link-by-size: analysis

Theorem. Using link-by-size, any UNION or FIND operation takes $O(\log n)$ time in the worst case, where $n$ is the number of elements.
Pf.

- The running time of each operation is bounded by the tree height.
- By the previous property, the height is $\leq\lfloor\lg n\rfloor$. -


Note. The Union operation takes $O(1)$ time except for its two calls to Find.

## A tight upper bound

Theorem. Using link-by-size, a tree with $n$ nodes can have height $=\lg n$. Pf.

- Arrange $2^{k}-1$ calls to Union to form a binomial tree of order $k$.
- An order- $k$ binomial tree has $2^{k}$ nodes and height $k$.




## UNION-FIND

D naïve linking

- link-by-size
- link-by-rank
p path compression
- link-by-rank with path compression
- context

Section 5.1.4

## Link-by-rank

Link-by-rank. Maintain an integer rank for each node, initially 0 . Link root of smaller rank to root of larger rank; if tie, increase rank of new root by 1 .

## Union(7, 3)



$$
\text { rank }=2
$$



Note. For now, rank = height.

## Link-by-rank

Link-by-rank. Maintain an integer rank for each node, initially 0. Link root of smaller rank to root of larger rank; if tie, increase rank of new root by 1.


Note. For now, rank = height.

## Link-by-rank

Link-by-rank. Maintain an integer rank for each node, initially 0. Link root of smaller rank to root of larger rank; if tie, increase rank of new root by 1 .

```
MAKE-SET(x)
parent[x] \leftarrowx.
rank[x]}\leftarrow0
FIND(x)
While ( }x\not=\mathrm{ parent [x])
    x}\leftarrow\operatorname{parent[x].
```

RETURN $x$.
$\operatorname{UNION}(x, y)$
$r \leftarrow \operatorname{FiND}(x)$.
$s \leftarrow \operatorname{Find}(y)$.
IF ( $r=s$ ) RETURN.
ELSE IF $(\operatorname{rank}[r]>\operatorname{rank}[s])$ parent $[s] \leftarrow r$.

ELSE IF $(\operatorname{rank}[r]<\operatorname{rank}[s])$ parent $[r] \leftarrow s$.

ElSE

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \operatorname{parent}[r] \leftarrow s \\
& \operatorname{rank}[s] \leftarrow \operatorname{rank}[s]+1
\end{aligned}
$$

## Link-by-rank: properties

Property 1. If $x$ is not a root node, then $\operatorname{rank}[x]<\operatorname{rank}[\operatorname{parent}[x]]$.
Pf. A node of rank $k$ is created only by linking two roots of rank $k-1$. -

Property 2. If $x$ is not a root node, then $\operatorname{rank}[x]$ will never change again.
Pf. Rank changes only for roots; a nonroot never becomes a root. -

Property 3. If parent $[x]$ changes, then $\operatorname{rank}[$ parent $[x]]$ strictly increases.
Pf. The parent can change only for a root, so before linking parent $[x]=x$. After $x$ is linked-by-rank to new root $r$ we have $\operatorname{rank}[r]>\operatorname{rank}[x]$. -


## Link-by-rank: properties

Property 4. Any root node of rank $k$ has $\geq 2^{k}$ nodes in its tree.

## Pf. [ by induction on $k$ ]

- Base case: true for $k=0$.
- Inductive hypothesis: assume true for $k-1$.
- A node of rank $k$ is created only by linking two roots of rank $k-1$.
- By inductive hypothesis, each subtree has $\geq 2^{k-1}$ nodes
$\Rightarrow$ resulting tree has $\geq 2^{k}$ nodes. -

Property 5. The highest rank of a node is $\leq\lfloor\lg n\rfloor$.
Pf. Immediate from Property 1 and Property 4. -


## Link-by-rank: properties

Property 6. For any integer $k \geq 0$, there are $\leq n / 2^{k}$ nodes with rank $k$. Pf.

- Any root node of rank $k$ has $\geq 2^{k}$ descendants. [PROPERTY 4]
- Any nonroot node of rank $k$ has $\geq 2^{k}$ descendants because:
- it had this property just before it became a nonroot [PROPERTY 4]
- its rank doesn't change once it became a nonroot [PROPERTY 2]
- its set of descendants doesn't change once it became a nonroot
- Different nodes of rank $k$ can't have common descendants. [PROPERTY 1]



## Link-by-rank: analysis

Theorem. Using link-by-rank, any UNION or FIND operation takes $O(\log n)$ time in the worst case, where $n$ is the number of elements.
Pf.

- The running time of UnION and FIND is bounded by the tree height.
- By Property 5, the height is $\leq\lfloor\lg n\rfloor$. -



## UNION-Find

> naïve linking

- link-by-size
- link-by-rank
- path compression
b link-by-rank with path compression
- context

SECTION 5.1.4

## Path compression

Path compression. When finding the root $r$ of the tree containing $x$, change the parent pointer of all nodes along the path to point directly to $r$.


## Path compression

Path compression. When finding the root $r$ of the tree containing $x$, change the parent pointer of all nodes along the path to point directly to $r$.


## Path compression

Path compression. When finding the root $r$ of the tree containing $x$, change the parent pointer of all nodes along the path to point directly to $r$.


## Path compression

Path compression. When finding the root $r$ of the tree containing $x$, change the parent pointer of all nodes along the path to point directly to $r$.


## Path compression

Path compression. When finding the root $r$ of the tree containing $x$, change the parent pointer of all nodes along the path to point directly to $r$.


## Path compression

Path compression. When finding the root $r$ of the tree containing $x$, change the parent pointer of all nodes along the path to point directly to $r$.


## Path compression

Path compression. When finding the root $r$ of the tree containing $x$, change the parent pointer of all nodes along the path to point directly to $r$.

```
FIND(x)
IF (x\not= parent [ x] )
    parent [x] \leftarrowFIND(parent [x]). \longleftarrow changes the tree structure (!)
RETURN parent [x].
```

this FIND implementation changes the tree structure (!)

Note. Path compression does not change the rank of a node; so height $(x) \leq \operatorname{rank}[x]$ but they are not necessarily equal.

## Path compression

Fact. Path compression with naïve linking can require $\Omega(n)$ time to perform a single UNION or FIND operation, where $n$ is the number of elements.

Pf. The height of the tree is $n-1$ after the sequence of union operations:
$\operatorname{UNION}(1,2), \operatorname{UNION}(2,3), \ldots, \operatorname{UNION}(n-1, n)$. -
naïve linking: link root of first tree to root of second tree

Theorem. [Tarjan-van Leeuwen 1984] Starting from an empty data structure, path compression with naïve linking performs any intermixed sequence of $m \geq n$ MAKE-SET, UNION, and FIND operations on a set of $n$ elements in $O(m \log n)$ time.

Pf. Nontrivial (but omitted).


## UNION-Find

, naïve linking
link-by-size

- link-by-rank
p path compression
- link-by-rank with path compression
p context

Section 5.1.4

## Link-by-rank with path compression: properties

Property. The tree roots, node ranks, and elements within a tree are the same with or without path compression.

Pf. Path compression does not create new roots, change ranks, or move elements from one tree to another. -


## Link-by-rank with path compression: properties

Property. The tree roots, node ranks, and elements within a tree are the same with or without path compression.

Corollary. Property 2, 4-6 hold for link-by-rank with path compression.

Property 1. If $x$ is not a root node, then $\operatorname{rank}[x]<\operatorname{rank}[$ parent $[x]]$.
Property 2. If $x$ is not a root node, then $\operatorname{rank}[x]$ will never change again.
Property 3. If parent $[x]$ changes, then $\operatorname{rank}[$ parent $[x]]$ strictly increases.
PROPERTY 4. Any root node of rank $k$ has $\geq 2^{k}$ nodes in its tree.
Property 5. The highest rank of a node is $\leq\lfloor\lg n\rfloor$.
Property 6. For any integer $k \geq 0$, there are $\leq n / 2^{k}$ nodes with rank $k$.

Bottom line. Property 1-6 hold for link-by-rank with path compression. (but we need to recheck Property 1 and Property 3)

## Link-by-rank with path compression: properties

PROPERTY 3. If $\operatorname{parent}[x]$ changes, then $\operatorname{rank}[$ parent $[x]]$ strictly increases.
Pf. Path compression can make $x$ point to only an ancestor of parent $[x]$.

PRoperty 1. If $x$ is not a root node, then $\operatorname{rank}[x]<\operatorname{rank}[\operatorname{parent}[x]]$.
Pf. Path compression doesn't change any ranks, but it can change parents.
If parent $[x]$ doesn't change during a path compression, the inequality continues to hold; if $\operatorname{parent}[x]$ changes, then $\operatorname{rank}[$ parent $[x]]$ strictly increases.


## Iterated logarithm function

Def. The iterated logarithm function is defined by:

iterated $\lg$ function

Note. We have $\lg ^{*} n \leq 5$ unless $n$ exceeds the \# atoms in the universe.

## Analysis

Divide nonzero ranks into the following groups:

- \{1 \}
- \{2 \}
- $\{3,4$ \}
- $\{5,6, \ldots, 16\}$
- $\left\{17,18, \ldots, 2^{16}\right\}$
- $\left\{65537,65538, \ldots, 2^{65536}\right\}$
- ...

Property 7. Every nonzero rank falls within one of the first $\lg ^{*} n$ groups. Pf. The rank is between 0 and $\lfloor\lg n\rfloor$. [PROPERTY 5]

## Creative accounting

Credits. A node receives credits as soon as it ceases to be a root. If its rank is in the interval $\left\{\underset{\text { group } k}{\left\{k+1, k+2, \ldots, 2^{k}\right\}}\right.$, we give it $2^{k}$ credits.

Proposition. Number of credits disbursed to all nodes is $\leq n \lg ^{*} n$. Pf.

- By Property 6, the number of nodes with rank $\geq k+1$ is at most

$$
\frac{n}{2^{k+1}}+\frac{n}{2^{k+2}}+\cdots \leq \frac{n}{2^{k}}
$$

- Thus, nodes in group $k$ need at most $n$ credits in total.
- There are $\leq \lg ^{*} n$ groups. [PROPERTY 7] •


## Running time of FIND

Running time of FIND. Bounded by number of parent pointers followed.

- Recall: the rank strictly increases as you go up a tree. [PROPERTY 1]
- Case 0: parent $[x]$ is a root $\Rightarrow$ only happens for one link per Find.
- Case 1: $\operatorname{rank}[\operatorname{parent}[x]]$ is in a higher group than $\operatorname{rank}[x]$.
- Case 2: $\operatorname{rank}[\operatorname{parent}[x]]$ is in the same group as $\operatorname{rank}[x]$.

Case 1. At most $\lg ^{*} n$ nodes on path can be in a higher group. [PROPERTY 7]

Case 2. These nodes are charged 1 credit to follow parent pointer.

- Each time $x$ pays 1 credit, $\operatorname{rank}[$ parent $[x]]$ strictly increases. [PROPERTY 1]
- Therefore, if $\operatorname{rank}[x]$ is in the group $\left\{k+1, \ldots, 2^{k}\right\}$, the rank of its parent will be in a higher group before $x$ pays $2^{k}$ credits.
- Once $\operatorname{rank}[\operatorname{parent}[x]]$ is in a higher group than $\operatorname{rank}[x]$, it remains so because:
- $\operatorname{rank}[x]$ does not change once it ceases to be a root. [PROPERTY 2]
- rank[parent[x]] does not decrease. [PROPERTY 3]
- thus, $x$ has enough credits to pay until it becomes a Case 1 node.


## Link-by-rank with path compression

Theorem. Starting from an empty data structure, link-by-rank with path compression performs any intermixed sequence of $m \geq n$ MAKE-SET, UnION, and FIND operations on a set of $n$ elements in $O\left(m \log ^{*} n\right)$ time.

## UNION-FIND

> naïve linking

- link-by-size
- link-by-rank
p path compression
, link-by-rank with path compression
- context


## Link-by-size with path compression

Theorem. [Fischer 1972] Starting from an empty data structure, link-by-size with path compression performs any intermixed sequence of $m \geq n$ MAKE-SET, UNION, and FIND operations on a set of $n$ elements in $O(m \log \log n)$ time.

MASSACHUSETTS INSTITUTE OF TECHNOLOGY
A. I. LABORATORY

Artificial Intelligence
Memo No. 256 April 1972

EFFICIENCY OF EQUIVALENCE ALGORITHNS
Michael J. Fischer

## 1. INTRODUCTION

The equivalence problem is to determine the finest partition on a set that is consistent with a sequence of assertions of the form "x $\equiv y^{\prime \prime}$. A strategy for doing this on a computer processes the assertions serially, maintaining always in storage a representation of the partition defined by the assertions so far encountered. To process the command " $x \equiv y$ ", the equivalence classes of $x$ and $y$ are determined. If they are the same, nothing further is done; otherwise the two classes are merged together.

## Link-by-size with path compression

Theorem. [Hopcroft-Ullman 1973] Starting from an empty data structure, link-by-size with path compression performs any intermixed sequence of $m \geq n$ MAKE-SET, UNION, and FIND operations on a set of $n$ elements in $O\left(m \log ^{*} n\right)$ time.

SIAM J. COMPUT.
Vol. 2, No. 4, December 1973

## SET MERGING ALGORITHMS*

J. E. HOPCROFT $\dagger$ and J. D. ULLMAN $\ddagger$


#### Abstract

This paper considers the problem of merging sets formed from a total of $n$ items in such a way that at any time, the name of a set containing a given item can be ascertained. Two algorithms using different data structures are discussed. The execution times of both algorithms are bounded by a constant times $n G(n)$, where $G(n)$ is a function whose asymptotic growth rate is less than that of any finite number of logarithms of $n$.

Key words. algorithm, algorithmic analysis, computational complexity, data structure, equivalence algorithm, merging, property grammar, set, spanning tree


## Link-by-size with path compression

Theorem. [Tarjan 1975] Starting from an empty data structure, link-by-size with path compression performs any intermixed sequence of $m \geq n$ MAKE-SET, UNION, and FIND operations on a set of $n$ elements in $O(m \alpha(m, n))$ time, where $\alpha(m, n)$ is a functional inverse of the Ackermann function.

Efficiency of a Good But Not Linear Set Union Algorithm

ROBERT ENDRE TARJAN
Unversity of California, Berkeley, Californıa
abstract. Two types of instructions for mampulating a family of disjoint sets which partition a universe of $n$ elements are considered $F I N D(x)$ computes the name of the (unique) set containing element $x \operatorname{UNION}(A, B, C)$ combines sets $A$ and $B$ into a new set named $C$. A known algorithm for implementing sequences of these instructions is examined It is shown that, if $t(m, n)$ is the maximum time required by a sequence of $m \geq n$ FINDs and $n-1$ intermixed UNIONs, then $k_{1} m \alpha(m, n) \leq$ $t(m, n) \leq k_{2} m_{\alpha}(m, n)$ for some positive constants $k_{1}$ and $k_{2}$, where $\alpha(m, n)$ is related to a functional inverse of Ackermann's function and is very slow-growing.

## Ackermann function

## Ackermann function. [Ackermann 1928] A computable function that is not

 primitive recursive.$$
A(m, n)= \begin{cases}n+1 & \text { if } m=0 \\ A(m-1,1) & \text { if } m>0 \text { and } n=0 \\ A(m-1, A(m, n-1)) & \text { if } m>0 \text { and } n>0\end{cases}
$$

## Zum Hilbertschen Aufbau der reellen Zahlen.

Von
Wilhelm Ackermann in Göttìngen.


#### Abstract

Um den Beweis für die von Cantor aufgestellte Vermatung zu erbringen, daß sich die Menge der reellen Zahlen, d. h. der zahlentheoretischen Funktionen, mit Hilfe der Zahlen der zweiten Zahlklasse auszählen läßt, benutzt Hilbert einen speziellen Aufbau der zahlentheoretischen Funktionen. Wesentlich bei diesem Aufbau ist der Begriff des Typs einer Punktion. Eine Funktion vom Typ 1 ist eine solche, deren Argumente und Werte ganze Zahlen sind, also eine gewöhnliche zahlentheoretische Funktion. Die Funktionen vom Typ 2 sind die Funktionenfunktionen. Eine derartige Funktion ordnet jeder zahlentheoretischen Funktion eine Zahl zu. Eine Funktion vom Typ 3 ordnet wieder den Funktionenfunktionen Zahlen zu, usw. Die Definition der Typen läbt sich auch ins Transfinite fortsetzen, für den Gegenstand dieser Arbeit ist das aber nicht von Belang ${ }^{1}$ ).


Note. There are many inequivalent definitions.

## Ackermann function

Ackermann function. [Ackermann 1928] A computable function that is not primitive recursive.

$$
A(m, n)= \begin{cases}n+1 & \text { if } m=0 \\ A(m-1,1) & \text { if } m>0 \text { and } n=0 \\ A(m-1, A(m, n-1)) & \text { if } m>0 \text { and } n>0\end{cases}
$$

Inverse Ackermann function.

$$
\alpha(m, n)=\min \left\{i \geq 1: A(i,\lfloor m / n\rfloor) \geq \log _{2} n\right\}
$$

" I am not smart enough to understand this easily."

- Raymond Seidel



## Inverse Ackermann function

Definition.

$$
\alpha_{k}(n)= \begin{cases}\lceil n / 2\rceil & \text { if } k=1 \\ 0 & \text { if } n=1 \text { and } k \geq 2 \\ 1+\alpha_{k}\left(\alpha_{k-1}(n)\right) & \text { otherwise }\end{cases}
$$

Ex.

- $\alpha_{1}(n)=\lceil n / 2\rceil$.
- $\alpha_{2}(n)=\lceil\lg n\rceil=$ \# of times we divide n by 2 , until we reach 1 .
- $\alpha_{3}(n)=\lg ^{*} n=$ \# of times we apply the $\lg$ function to n , until we reach 1 .
- $\alpha_{4}(n)=\#$ of times we apply the iterated Ig function to $n$, until we reach 1 .

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | 2 |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | 655 | $=$ | $\underbrace{2^{2}}$ |  |  |
|  | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 | 16 | $\ldots$ | 216 | $\ldots$ | 265536 | ... | $2 \uparrow 65536$ |
| $\alpha_{1}(n)$ | 1 | 1 | 2 | 2 | 3 | 3 | 4 | 4 | 5 | 5 | 6 | 6 | 7 | 7 | 8 | 8 | $\ldots$ | 215 | $\ldots$ | 265535 | $\ldots$ | huge |
| $\alpha_{2}(n)$ | 0 | 1 | 2 | 2 | 3 | 3 | 3 | 3 | 4 | 4 | 4 | 4 | 4 | 4 | 4 | 4 | $\ldots$ | 16 | $\ldots$ | 65536 | $\ldots$ | $2 \uparrow 65535$ |
| $\alpha_{3}(n)$ | 0 | 1 | 2 | 2 | 3 | 3 | 3 | 3 | 3 | 3 | 3 | 3 | 3 | 3 | 3 | 3 | $\cdots$ | 4 | $\ldots$ | 5 | $\ldots$ | 65536 |
| $\alpha_{4}(n)$ | 0 | 1 | 2 | 2 | 3 | 3 | 3 | 3 | 3 | 3 | 3 | 3 | 3 | 3 | 3 | 3 | $\ldots$ | 3 | ... | 3 | ... | 4 |

## Inverse Ackermann function

Definition.

$$
\alpha_{k}(n)= \begin{cases}\lceil n / 2\rceil & \text { if } k=1 \\ 0 & \text { if } n=1 \text { and } k \geq 2 \\ 1+\alpha_{k}\left(\alpha_{k-1}(n)\right) & \text { otherwise }\end{cases}
$$

Property. For every $n \geq 5$, the sequence $\alpha_{1}(n), \alpha_{2}(n), \alpha_{3}(n), \ldots$ converges to 3 .
Ex. $[n=9876!] \alpha_{1}(n) \geq 10^{35163}, \alpha_{2}(n)=116812, \alpha_{3}(n)=6, \alpha_{4}(n)=4, \alpha_{5}(n)=3$.

One-parameter inverse Ackermann. $\alpha(n)=\min \left\{k: \alpha_{k}(n) \leq 3\right\}$.
Ex. $\alpha(9876!)=5$.

Two-parameter inverse Ackermann. $\alpha(m, n)=\min \left\{k: \alpha_{k}(n) \leq 3+m / n\right\}$.

## A tight lower bound

Theorem. [Fredman-Saks 1989] In the worst case, any Cell-Probe( $\log n$ ) algorithm requires $\Omega(m \alpha(m, n))$ time to perform an intermixed sequence of $m$ MAKe-Set, Union, and Find operations on a set of $n$ elements.

Cell-probe model. [Yao 1981] Count only number of words of memory accessed; all other operations are free.

## Bellcore and

U.C. San Diego

## 1. Summary of Results

Dynamic data structure problems involve the representation of data in memory in such a way as to permit certain types of modifications of the data (updates) and certain types of questions about the data (queries). This paradigm encompasses many fundamental problems in computer science.

The purpose of this paper is to prove new lower and upper bounds on the time per operation to implement solutions to some familiar dynamic data structure problems including list representation, subset ranking, partial sums, and the set union problem. The main features of our lower bounds are:
(1) Thev hold in the cell probe model of combutation (A. Yan
(1) Tisv hold in Hecll arobe madel or cornion

Michacl E. Saks ${ }^{2}$
U.C. San Diego,

Bellcore and
Rutgers University
register size from $\log n$ to poly $\log (n)$ only reduces the time complexity by a constant factor. On the other hand, decreasing the register size from $\log n$ to 1 increases time complexity by a $\log n$ factor for one of the problems we consider and only a loglogn factor for some other problems.
The first two specific data structure problems for which we obtain bounds are:
List Representation. This problem concerns the represention of an ordered list of at most $n$ (not necessarily distinct) elements from the universe $U=\{1,2, \ldots, n\}$. The operations to be supported are report $(k)$, which returns the $k^{\text {th }}$ element of the list, insert(k. u) which inserts element u into the list between the

## Path compaction variants

Path splitting. Make every node on path point to its grandparent.


## Path compaction variants

Path halving. Make every other node on path point to its grandparent.


## Linking variants

Link-by-size. Number of nodes in tree.

Link-by-rank. Rank of tree.

Link-by-random. Label each element with a random real number between 0.0 and 1.0. Link root with smaller label into root with larger label.

## Disjoint-sets data structures

Theorem. [Tarjan-van Leeuwen 1984] Starting from an empty data structure, link-by- \{ size, rank \} combined with \{ path compression, path splitting, path halving $\}$ performs any intermixed sequence of $m \geq n$ MAKE-SET, UNION, and FIND operations on a set of $n$ elements in $O(m \alpha(m, n))$ time.

## Worst-Case Analysis of Set Union Algorithms

ROBERT E. TARJAN
AT\&T Bell Laboratories, Murray Hull, New Jersey
AND
JAN VAN LEEUWEN
Universty of Uirecht, Utrecht, The Netherlands

Abstract. This paper analyzes the asymptotic worst-case running time of a number of variants of the well-known method of path compression for maintaining a collection of disjoint sets under union. We show that two one-pass methods proposed by van Leeuwen and van der Weide are asymptotically optimal, whereas several other methods, including one proposed by Rem and advocated by Dijkstra, are slower than the best methods.

## Part III

## Algorithm Design Techniques

## Algorithmic paradigms

Greed. Build up a solution incrementally, myopically optimizing some local criterion.

Divide-and-conquer. Break up a problem into independent subproblems; solve each subproblem; combine solutions to subproblems to form solution to original problem.

Dynamic programming. Break up a problem into a series of overlapping subproblems, combine solutions to smaller subproblems to form solution to large subproblem.
fancy name for
caching intermediate results
in a table for later reuse
Peak FindingClosest Pair of Points
Dynamic Programming
Interval Scheduling
Parenthesization Problem
Knapsack Problem
Sequence Alignement
Bellman-Ford Algorithm
Greedy AlgorithmsCoin ChangingInterval SchedulingInterval PartitioningScheduling to Minimize Lateness
Optimal Caching
Dijkstra's algorithm
Minimum Spanning Trees

## DIVIDE AND CONQUER

## DIVIDE AND CONQUER

Nothing is particularly hard if you divide it into small jobs.
Henry Ford

## Divide-and-conquer paradigm

Divide-and-conquer.

- Divide up problem into several subproblems (of the same kind).
- Solve (conquer) each subproblem recursively.
- Combine solutions to subproblems into overall solution.


## Most common usage.

- Divide problem of size $n$ into two subproblems of size $n / 2$.
- Solve (conquer) two subproblems recursively.
- Combine two solutions into overall solution. $\qquad$

Consequence.

- Brute force: $\Theta\left(n^{2}\right)$.
- Divide-and-conquer: $O(n \log n)$.

attributed to Julius Caesar


## DIVIDE AND CONQUER

MAXIMAL AND MINIMAL ELEMENTS

## NAIVE ALGORITHM

## complexity: number of comparisons

Algorithm: Iterative MaxMin
Input: sequence $S[1 \ldots n]$
Output: maximal and minimal element
$1 \max \leftarrow S[1] ; \min \leftarrow S[1]$
2 for $i \leftarrow 2$ to $n$ do
3 if $S[i]>\max$ then $\max \leftarrow S[i]$
4
if $S[i]<\min$ then $\min \leftarrow S[i]$
5 return max, min
2( $n-1$ ) comparisons

## DIVIDE AND CONQUER ALGORITHM

divide the sequence into two equally sizek subsequences
solve find maximal and minimal elements of both subsequences
combine greater of the maximal elements is the maximal element of the whole sequence (the same for the minimal element)

Algorithm: MaxMin
Input: sequence $S[1 \ldots n]$, indices $x, y$
Output: maximal and minimal element of $S[x \ldots y]$
1 if $y=x$ then return $(S[x], S[x])$
2 if $y=x+1$ then return $(\max (S[x], S[y]), \min (S[x], S[y]))$
3 if $y>x+1$ then
4
5

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \left(l_{1}, l_{2}\right) \leftarrow \operatorname{MaxMin}(S, x,\lfloor(x+y) / 2\rfloor) \\
& \left(r_{1}, r_{2}\right) \leftarrow \operatorname{MaxMin}(S,\lfloor(x+y) / 2\rfloor+1, y)
\end{aligned}
$$

6 return $\left(\max \left(l_{1}, r_{1}\right), \min \left(l_{2}, r_{2}\right)\right)$
correctness induction w.r.t. the length of the sequence

## complexity

$$
T(n)= \begin{cases}1 & \text { for } n=2 \\ T(\lfloor n / 2\rfloor)+T(\lceil n / 2\rceil)+2 & \text { for } n>2\end{cases}
$$

by induction w.r.t. $n$ we can check that $T(n)<\frac{5}{3} n-2$
$n=2 T(2)=1$ and $1<\frac{5}{3} \cdot 2-2$
$n>2$ assumption: the inequality is true for all $i, 2 \leq i<n$ let us prove the inequality for $n$

$$
\begin{aligned}
T(n) & =T(\lfloor n / 2\rfloor)+T(\lceil n / 2\rceil)+2 \\
& <\frac{5}{3}\lfloor n / 2\rfloor-2+\frac{5}{3}\lceil n / 2\rceil-2+2=\frac{5}{3} n-2
\end{aligned}
$$

## DIVIDE AND CONQUER

 PEAK FINDING
### 6.006

## Introduction to Algorithms



Lecture 2: Peak Finding
Prof. Erik Demaine

## 1D Peak Finding

- Given an array $A[0 . . n-1]$ :

$$
\begin{array}{rl|l|l|l|l|l|l|} 
\\
A:-\infty & 1 & 2 & 6 & 5 & 3 & 7 & 4 \\
-\infty & 1 & 1 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6
\end{array}
$$

- $A[i]$ is a peak if it is not smaller than its neighbor(s):

$$
A[i-1] \leq A[i] \geq A[i+1]
$$

where we imagine

$$
A[-1]=A[n]=-\infty
$$

- Goal: Find any peak


## "Brute Force" Algorithm

- Test all elements for peakyness


$$
A: \begin{array}{cc|c|c|c|c|c|c|}
\hline & 1 & 2 & 6 & 5 & 3 & 7 & 4 \\
0 & 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6
\end{array}
$$

## Algorithm 1½

- $\max (A)$
- Global maximum is a local maximum


$$
A: \begin{array}{c|c|c|c|c|c|c|}
\hline & 1 & 2 & 6 & 5 & 3 & 7 \\
\hline
\end{array} 0
$$

## Cleverer Idea

- Look at any element $A[i]$ and its neighbors $A[i-1] \& A[i+1]$
- If peak: return $i$

- Otherwise: locally rising on some side
- Must be a peak in that direction
- So can throw away rest of array,
rising
 leaving $A[: i]$ or $A[i+1$ : $]$



## Where to Sample?

- Want to minimize the worst-case remaining elements in array
- Balance $A[: i]$ of length $i$ with $A[i+1$ : ] of length $n-i-1$
$-i=n-i-1$
$-i=(n-1) / 2$ : middle element
- Reduce $n$ to $\frac{(n-1) / 2}{\downarrow}$

$$
A: \begin{array}{c|c|c|c|c|c|c|}
\hline & 1 & 2 & 6 & 5 & 3 & 7 \\
4 \\
0 & 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6
\end{array}
$$

## Algorithm

peak1d $(A, i, j)$ :

$$
\begin{aligned}
& m=\lfloor(i+j) / 2\rfloor \\
& \text { if } A[m-1] \leq A[m] \geq A[m+1]: \\
& \quad \text { return } m \\
& \text { elif } A[m-1]>A[m]: \\
& \quad \text { return peak1d }(A, i, m-1) \\
& \text { elif } A[m]<A[m+1]: \\
& \quad \text { return peak1d }(A, m+1, j) \\
& \hline
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
A: \begin{array}{c|c|c|c|c|c|c|}
\hline 1 & 2 & 6 & 5 & 3 & 7 & 4 \\
\hline 0 & 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6
\end{array}
$$

## Divide \& Conquer

- General design technique:

1. Divide input into part(s)
2. Conquer each part recursively

- 1D peak:

1. One half
2. Recurse
3. Return
4. Combine result(s) to solve original problem

## Divide \& Conquer Analysis

- Recurrence for time $T(n)$ taken by problem size $n$

1. Divide input into part(s):

$$
n_{1}, n_{2}, \ldots, n_{k}
$$

2. Conquer each part recursively
3. Combine result(s) to solve original problem

$$
T(n)=
$$

divide cost +

$$
\begin{array}{r}
T\left(n_{1}\right)+T\left(n_{2}\right) \\
+\cdots+T\left(n_{k}\right)
\end{array}
$$

+ combine cost


## 1D Peak Finding Analysis

- Divide problem into 1 problem of size $\sim \frac{n}{2}$
- Divide cost: $O(1)$
- Combine cost: $O(1)$
- Recurrence:

$$
T(n)=T\left(\frac{n}{2}\right)+O(1)
$$

## Solving Recurrence

$$
\begin{aligned}
& T(n)=T\left(\frac{n}{2}\right)+c \\
& T(n)=T\left(\frac{n}{4}\right)+c+c \\
& T(n)=T\left(\frac{n}{8}\right)+c+c+c \\
& T(n)=T\left(\frac{n}{2^{k}}\right)+c k \\
& T(n)=T\left(\frac{n}{2 \ln n}\right)+c \lg n \\
& T(n)=T(1)+c \lg n \\
& T(n)=\Theta(\lg n)
\end{aligned}
$$

## 2D Peak Finding

- Given $n \times n$ matrix of numbers
- Want an entry not smaller than its (up to) 4 neighbors:


| 9 | 3 | 5 | 2 | 4 | 9 | 8 |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 7 | 2 | 5 | 1 | 4 | 0 | 3 |
| 9 | 8 | 9 | 3 | 2 | 4 | 8 |
| 7 | 6 | 3 | 1 | 3 | 2 | 3 |
| 9 | 0 | 6 | 0 | 4 | 6 | 4 |
| 8 | 9 | 8 | 0 | 5 | 3 | 0 |
| 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |

## Divide \& Conquer \#0

- Looking at center element doesn't split the problem into pieces...

| 9 | 3 | 5 | 2 | 4 | 9 | 8 |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 7 | 2 | 5 | 1 | 4 | 0 | 3 |
| 9 | 8 | 9 | 3 | 2 | 4 | 8 |
| 7 | 6 | 3 | 1 | 3 | 2 | 3 |
| 9 | 0 | 6 | 0 | 4 | 6 | 4 |
| 8 | 9 | 8 | 0 | 5 | 3 | 0 |
| 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |

## Divide \& Conquer \#1²

- Consider max element in each column
- 1D algorithm would solve max array in $O(\lg n)$ time
- But $\Theta\left(n^{2}\right)$ time to compute max array

| 9 | 3 | 5 | 2 | 4 | 9 | 8 |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 7 | 2 | 5 | 1 | 4 | 0 | 3 |
| 9 | 8 | 9 | 3 | 2 | 4 | 8 |
| 7 | 6 | 3 | 1 | 3 | 2 | 3 |
| 9 | 0 | 6 | 0 | 4 | 6 | 4 |
| 8 | 9 | 8 | 0 | 5 | 3 | 0 |
| 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |


| 9 | 9 | 9 | 3 | 5 | 9 | 8 |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |

## Divide \& Conquer \#1

- Look at center column
- Find global max within
- If peak: return it
- Else:
- Larger left/right neighbor
- Larger max in that column
- Recurse in left/right half
- Base case: 1 column
- Return global max within

| 9 | 3 | 5 | 2 | 4 | 9 | 8 |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 7 | 2 | 5 | 1 | 4 | 0 | 3 |
| 9 | 8 | 9 | 3 | 2 | 4 | 8 |
| 7 | 6 | 3 | 1 | 3 | 2 | 3 |
| 9 | 0 | 6 | 0 | 4 | 6 | 4 |
| 8 | 9 | 8 | 0 | 5 | 3 | 0 |
| 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |


| 9 | 9 | 9 | 3 | 5 | 9 | 8 |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |

## Analysis \#1

- $O(n)$ time to find max in column
- $O(\lg n)$ iterations (like binary search)
- $O(n \lg n)$ time total

| 9 | 3 | 5 | 2 | 4 | 9 | 8 |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 7 | 2 | 5 | 1 | 4 | 0 | 3 |
| 9 | 8 | 9 | 3 | 2 | 4 | 8 |
| 7 | 6 | 3 | 1 | 3 | 2 | 3 |
| 9 | 0 | 6 | 0 | 4 | 6 | 4 |
| 8 | 9 | 8 | 0 | 5 | 3 | 0 |
| 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |

- Can we do better?


## Divide \& Conquer \#2

- Look at boundary, center row, and center column (window)
- Find global max within
- If it's a peak: return it
- Else:
- Find larger neighbor
- Can't be in window

| 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 0 | 9 | 3 | 5 | 2 | 4 | 9 | 8 | 0 |
| 0 | 7 | 2 | 5 | 1 | 4 | 0 | 3 | 0 |
| 0 | 9 | 8 | 9 | 3 | 2 | 4 | 8 | 0 |
| 0 | 7 | 6 | 3 | 1 | 3 | 2 | 3 | 0 |
| 0 | 9 | 0 | 6 | 0 | 4 | 6 | 4 | 0 |
| 0 | 8 | 9 | 8 | 0 | 5 | 3 | 0 | 0 |
| 0 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 |
| 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |

- Recurse in quadrant, including green boundary


## Correctness

- Lemma: If you enter a quadrant, it contains a peak of the overall array [climb up]
- Invariant: Maximum element of window never decreases as we descend in recursion
- Theorem: Peak in visited quadrant is also peak in overall array

| 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 0 | 9 | 3 | 5 | 2 | 4 | 9 | 8 | 0 |
| 0 | 7 | 2 | 5 | 1 | 4 | 0 | 3 | 0 |
| 0 | 9 | 8 | 9 | 3 | 2 | 4 | 8 | 0 |
| 0 | 7 | 6 | 3 | 1 | 3 | 2 | 3 | 0 |
| 0 | 9 | 0 | 6 | 0 | 4 | 6 | 4 | 0 |
| 0 | 8 | 9 | 8 | 0 | 5 | 3 | 0 | 0 |
| 0 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 |
| 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |

$\rightarrow$ proofs in recitation

## Analysis \#2

- Reduce $n \times n$ matrix to $\sim \frac{n}{2} \times \frac{n}{2}$ submatrix in $O(n)$ time (|window|)
$T(n)=T\left(\frac{n}{2}\right)+c n$
$T(n)=T\left(\frac{n}{4}\right)+c \frac{n}{2}+c n$
$T(n)=T\left(\frac{n}{8}\right)+c \frac{n}{4}+c \frac{n}{2}+c n$
$\theta(n)$
$T(n)=T(1)+c\left(1+2+4+\cdots+\frac{n}{4}+\frac{n}{2}+n\right)$


## DIVIDE AND CONQUER

CLOSEST PAIR OF POINTS


## 5. Divide and Conquer

- mergesort
- counting inversions
b randomized quicksort
- median and selection
- closest pair of points


## Closest pair of points

Closest pair problem. Given $n$ points in the plane, find a pair of points with the smallest Euclidean distance between them.

Fundamental geometric primitive.

- Graphics, computer vision, geographic information systems, molecular modeling, air traffic control.
- Special case of nearest neighbor, Euclidean MST, Voronoi.
fast closest pair inspired fast algorithms for these problems



## Closest pair of points

Closest pair problem. Given $n$ points in the plane, find a pair of points with the smallest Euclidean distance between them.

Brute force. Check all pairs with $\Theta\left(n^{2}\right)$ distance calculations.

1D version. Easy $O(n \log n)$ algorithm if points are on a line.

Non-degeneracy assumption. No two points have the same $x$-coordinate.


Closest pair of points: first attempt

Sorting solution.

- Sort by $x$-coordinate and consider nearby points.
- Sort by $y$-coordinate and consider nearby points.


Closest pair of points: first attempt

Sorting solution.

- Sort by $x$-coordinate and consider nearby points.
- Sort by $y$-coordinate and consider nearby points.


Closest pair of points: second attempt
Divide. Subdivide region into 4 quadrants.


Closest pair of points: second attempt
Divide. Subdivide region into 4 quadrants.
Obstacle. Impossible to ensure $n / 4$ points in each piece.


Closest pair of points: divide-and-conquer algorithm

- Divide: draw vertical line $L$ so that $n / 2$ points on each side.
- Conquer: find closest pair in each side recursively.
- Combine: find closest pair with one point in each side.
- Return best of 3 solutions.


How to find closest pair with one point in each side?

Find closest pair with one point in each side, assuming that distance $<\delta$.

- Observation: suffices to consider only those points within $\delta$ of line $L$.


How to find closest pair with one point in each side?

Find closest pair with one point in each side, assuming that distance $<\delta$.

- Observation: suffices to consider only those points within $\delta$ of line $L$.
- Sort points in $2 \delta$-strip by their $y$-coordinate.
- Check distances of only those points within 7 positions in sorted list!
why?



## How to find closest pair with one point in each side?

Def. Let $s_{i}$ be the point in the $2 \delta$-strip, with the $i^{\text {th }}$ smallest $y$-coordinate.

Claim. If $|j-i|>7$, then the distance between $s_{i}$ and $s_{j}$ is at least $\delta$.

Pf.

- Consider the $2 \delta$-by- $\delta$ rectangle $R$ in strip whose min $y$-coordinate is $y$-coordinate of $s_{i}$.
- Distance between $s_{i}$ and any point $s_{j}$ above $R$ is $\geq \delta$.
- Subdivide $R$ into 8 squares.
- At most 1 point per square.
- At most 7 other points can be in $R$. -



## Closest pair of points: divide-and-conquer algorithm

$\operatorname{CLOSEST-PAIR}\left(p_{1}, p_{2}, \ldots, p_{n}\right)$

Compute vertical line $L$ such that half the points are on each side of the line.
$\delta_{1} \leftarrow$ Closest-Pair(points in left half).
$\delta_{2} \leftarrow$ CLOSEST-PAIR(points in right half).
$\longleftarrow O(n)$
$\longleftarrow T(n / 2)$
$\longleftarrow T(n / 2)$
$\delta \leftarrow \min \left\{\delta_{1}, \delta_{2}\right\}$.
Delete all points further than $\delta$ from line $L$.
Sort remaining points by $y$-coordinate.
Scan points in $y$-order and compare distance between each point and next 7 neighbors. If any of these
$\longleftarrow O(n)$
$\longleftarrow O(n \log n)$
$\longleftarrow O(n)$ distances is less than $\delta$, update $\delta$.

RETURN $\delta$.

## Divide-and-conquer: quiz 6

What is the solution to the following recurrence?

$$
T(n)= \begin{cases}\Theta(1) & \text { if } n=1 \\ T(\lfloor n / 2\rfloor)+T(\lceil n / 2\rceil)+\Theta(n \log n) & \text { if } n>1\end{cases}
$$

A. $\quad T(n)=\Theta(n)$.
B. $\quad T(n)=\Theta(n \log n)$.
C. $\quad T(n)=\Theta\left(n \log ^{2} n\right)$.
D. $T(n)=\Theta\left(n^{2}\right)$.

## Refined version of closest-pair algorithm

Q. How to improve to $O(n \log n)$ ?
A. Don't sort points in strip from scratch each time.

- Each recursive call returns two lists: all points sorted by $x$-coordinate, and all points sorted by $y$-coordinate.
- Sort by merging two pre-sorted lists.

Theorem. [Shamos 1975] The divide-and-conquer algorithm for finding a closest pair of points in the plane can be implemented in $O(n \log n)$ time.

Pf. $\quad T(n)= \begin{cases}\Theta(1) & \text { if } n=1 \\ T(\lfloor n / 2\rfloor)+T(\lceil n / 2\rceil)+\Theta(n) & \text { if } n>1\end{cases}$


## Divide-and-conquer: quiz 7

What is the complexity of the 2D closest pair problem?
A. $\Theta(n)$.
B. $\Theta\left(n \log ^{*} n\right)$.
C. $\Theta(n \log \log n)$.
D. $\Theta(n \log n)$.
E. Not even Tarjan knows.

## Computational complexity of closest-pair problem

Theorem. [Ben-Or 1983, Yao 1989] In quadratic decision tree model, any algorithm for closest pair (even in 1D) requires $\Omega(n \log n)$ quadratic tests.

$$
\left(x_{1}-x_{2}\right)^{2}+\left(y_{1}-y_{2}\right)^{2}
$$

Lower Bounds for Algebraic Computation Trees
with Integer Inputs*

Andrew Chi-Chih Yao
Department of Computer Science
Princeton University
Princeton, New Jersey 08544

Theorem. [Rabin 1976] There exists an algorithm to find the closest pair of points in the plane whose expected running time is $O(n)$.

[^0]
## Digression: computational geometry

Ingenious divide-and-conquer algorithms for core geometric problems.

| problem | brute | clever |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| closest pair | $O\left(n^{2}\right)$ | $O(n \log n)$ | $O(n \log n)$ |
| farthest pair | $O\left(n^{2}\right)$ | $O(n \log n)$ | $O(n \log n)$ |
| convex hull | $O\left(n^{2}\right)$ | $O(n \log n)$ | $O\left(n^{4}\right)$ |
| Delaunay/Voronoi | $O\left(n^{2}\right)$ | $O$ |  |
| Euclidean MST |  |  |  |

running time to solve a 2 D problem with n points

Note. 3D and higher dimensions test limits of our ingenuity.

## Convex hull

The convex hull of a set of $n$ points is the smallest perimeter fence enclosing the points.


Equivalent definitions.

- Smallest area convex polygon enclosing the points.
- Intersection of all convex set containing all the points.


## Farthest pair

Given $n$ points in the plane, find a pair of points with the largest Euclidean distance between them.


Fact. Points in farthest pair are extreme points on convex hull.

## Delaunay triangulation

The Delaunay triangulation is a triangulation of $n$ points in the plane such that no point is inside the circumcircle of any triangle.

point inside circumcircle of 3 points


Delaunay triangulation of 19 points

Some useful properties.

- No edges cross.
- Among all triangulations, it maximizes the minimum angle.
- Contains an edge between each point and its nearest neighbor.


## Euclidean MST

Given $n$ points in the plane, find MST connecting them. [distances between point pairs are Euclidean distances]


Fact. Euclidean MST is subgraph of Delaunay triangulation. Implication. Can compute Euclidean MST in $O(n \log n)$ time.

- Compute Delaunay triangulation.



## Computational geometry applications

Applications.

- Robotics.
- VLSI design.
- Data mining.
- Medical imaging.
- Computer vision.
- Scientific computing.
- Finite-element meshing.

airflow around an aircraft wing
- Astronomical simulation.
- Models of physical world.
- Geographic information systems.
- Computer graphics (movies, games, virtual reality).
http://www.ics.uci.edu/~eppstein/geom.html


## DYNAMIC PROGRAMMING

## DYNAMIC PROGRAMMING - ETYMOLOGY

Jeff Erickson: Algorithms
The dynamic programming paradigm was developed by Richard Bellman in the mid-1950s, while working at the RAND Corporation. Bellman deliberately chose the name dynamic programming to hide the mathematical character of his work from his military bosses, who were actively hostile toward anything resembling mathematical research. Here, the word programming does not refer to writing code, but rather to the older sense of planning or scheduling, typically by filling in a table. For example, sports programs and theater programs are schedules of important events; television programming involves filling each available time slot with a show; degree programs are schedules of classes to be taken. The Air Force funded Bellman an other to develop methods for constructing training and logistics schedules, or as they called them, programs. The word dynamic is meant to suggest that the table is filled in over time, rather than all at once (as in linear programming).

## Dynamic programming history

Bellman. Pioneered the systematic study of dynamic programming in 1950s.

Etymology.

- Dynamic programming = planning over time.
- Secretary of Defense had pathological fear of mathematical research.
- Bellman sought a "dynamic" adjective to avoid conflict.



## THE THEORY OF DYNAMIC PROGRAMMING

## richard bellman

1. Introduction. Before turning to a discussion of some representative problems which will permit us to exhibit various mathematical features of the theory, let us present a brief survey of the fundamental concepts, hopes, and aspirations of dynamic programming.
To begin with, the theory was created to treat the mathematical problems arising from the study of various multi-stage decision problems arising from the study of various multi-stage decision have a physical system whose state at any time $t$ is determined by a set of quantities which we call state parameters, or state variables. At certain times, which may be prescribed in advance, or which may be determined by the process itself, we are called upon to make decisions which will affect the state of the system. These decisions are equivalent to transformations of the state variables, the choice of a decision being identical with the choice of a transformation. The outcome of the preceding decisions is to be used to guide the choice of future ones, with the purpose of the whole process that of maximizing some function of the parameters describing the final state.
Examples of processes fitting this loose description are furnished by virtually every phase of modern life, from the planning of industrial production lines to the scheduling of patients at a medical clinic; from the determination of long-term investment programs for universities to the determination of a replacement policy for machinery in factories; from the programming of training policies for skilled and unskilled labor to the choice of optimal purchasing and inventory policies for department stores and military establishments.

## Dynamic programming applications

Application areas.

- Computer science: AI, compilers, systems, graphics, theory, ....
- Operations research.
- Information theory.
- Control theory.
- Bioinformatics.

Some famous dynamic programming algorithms.

- Avidan-Shamir for seam carving.
- Unix diff for comparing two files.
- Viterbi for hidden Markov models.
- De Boor for evaluating spline curves.
- Bellman-Ford-Moore for shortest path.
- Knuth-Plass for word wrapping text in $T_{\mathrm{E}} X$.
- Cocke-Kasami-Younger for parsing context-free grammars.
- Needleman-Wunsch/Smith-Waterman for sequence alignment.


## Dynamic programming books

| PRITCEINX IMAMMIXXS II MAIERMEIILS |
| :---: |
| Richard bellmal |
| Dynamic Programming |


| Hiogeang Lham <br> Drong in <br> Pathonotho <br> Ding Wane |
| :---: |
| Adaptive Dynamic Programming for Control |



Dynamic Programming and Optimal Control


## DYNAMIC PROGRAMMING

INTERVAL SCHEDULING


## 6. Dynamic Programming I

- weighted interval scheduling
> segmented least squares
- knapsack problem
- RNA secondary struciure


## Weighted interval scheduling

- Job $j$ starts at $s_{j}$, finishes at $f_{j}$, and has weight $w_{j}>0$.
- Two jobs are compatible if they don't overlap.
- Goal: find max-weight subset of mutually compatible jobs.



## Earliest-finish-time first algorithm

## Earliest finish-time first.

- Consider jobs in ascending order of finish time.
- Add job to subset if it is compatible with previously chosen jobs.

Recall. Greedy algorithm is correct if all weights are 1.

Observation. Greedy algorithm fails spectacularly for weighted version.


## Weighted interval scheduling

Convention. Jobs are in ascending order of finish time: $f_{1} \leq f_{2} \leq \ldots \leq f_{n}$.

Def. $p(j)=$ largest index $i<j$ such that $\mathrm{job} i$ is compatible with $j$.
Ex. $p(8)=1, p(7)=3, p(2)=0$.


## Dynamic programming: binary choice

Def. $O P T(j)=$ max weight of any subset of mutually compatible jobs for subproblem consisting only of jobs $1,2, \ldots, j$.

Goal. $O P T(n)=$ max weight of any subset of mutually compatible jobs.

Case 1. $O P T(j)$ does not select job $j$.

- Must be an optimal solution to problem consisting of remaining jobs 1, 2, $\ldots, j-1$.

Case 2. $O P T(j)$ selects job $j$.

- Collect profit $w_{j}$.
- Can't use incompatible jobs $\{p(j)+1, p(j)+2, \ldots, j-1\}$.
- Must include optimal solution to problem consisting of remaining compatible jobs $1,2, \ldots, p(j)$.

Bellman equation. $O P T(j)= \begin{cases}0 & \text { if } j=0 \\ \max \left\{O P T(j-1), w_{j}+O P T(p(j))\right\} & \text { if } j>0\end{cases}$

## Weighted interval scheduling: brute force

BRUTE-FORCE $\left(n, s_{1}, \ldots, s_{n}, f_{1}, \ldots, f_{n}, w_{1}, \ldots, w_{n}\right)$
Sort jobs by finish time and renumber so that $f_{1} \leq f_{2} \leq \ldots \leq f_{n}$.
Compute $p[1], p[2], \ldots, p[n]$ via binary search.
Return Compute-Opt( $n$ ).

Compute-Opt $(j)$
IF $(j=0)$

## RETURN 0.

Else
Return max \{Compute-Opt $\left.(j-1), w_{j}+\operatorname{Compute-Opt}(p[j])\right\}$.

Dynamic programming: quiz 1

## What is running time of $\operatorname{Compute-Opt(n)~in~the~worst~case?~}$

A. $\Theta(n \log n)$
B. $\Theta\left(n^{2}\right)$
C. $\Theta\left(1.618^{n}\right)$
D. $\Theta\left(2^{n}\right)$

Compute-Opt ( $j$ )
IF $(j=0)$

## RETURN 0.

Else
Return max $\left\{\operatorname{Compute-Opt}(j-1), w_{j}+\operatorname{Compute-Opt}(p[j])\right\}$.

## Weighted interval scheduling: brute force

Observation. Recursive algorithm is spectacularly slow because of overlapping subproblems $\Rightarrow$ exponential-time algorithm.

Ex. Number of recursive calls for family of "layered" instances grows like Fibonacci sequence.

recursion tree

## Weighted interval scheduling: memoization

Top-down dynamic programming (memoization).

- Cache result of subproblem $j$ in $M[j]$.
- Use $M[j]$ to avoid solving subproblem $j$ more than once.
$\operatorname{Top-Down}\left(n, s_{1}, \ldots, s_{n}, f_{1}, \ldots, f_{n}, w_{1}, \ldots, w_{n}\right)$
Sort jobs by finish time and renumber so that $f_{1} \leq f_{2} \leq \ldots \leq f_{n}$.
Compute $p[1], p[2], \ldots, p[n]$ via binary search.
$M[0] \leftarrow 0 . \longleftarrow$ global array
REtURN M-COMPUTE-Opt( $n$ ).

M-Compute-Opt( $j$ )
IF ( $M[j]$ is uninitialized) $M[j] \leftarrow \max \left\{\operatorname{M-Compute-Opt}(j-1), w_{j}+\operatorname{M-Compute-Opt}(p[j])\right\}$. RETURN $M[j]$.

## Weighted interval scheduling: running time

Claim. Memoized version of algorithm takes $O(n \log n)$ time.
Pf.

- Sort by finish time: $O(n \log n)$ via mergesort.
- Compute $p[j]$ for each $j$ : $O(n \log n)$ via binary search.
- M-Compute-Opt $(j)$ : each invocation takes $O(1)$ time and either
- (1) returns an initialized value $M[j]$
- (2) initializes $M[j]$ and makes two recursive calls
- Progress measure $\Phi=$ \# initialized entries among $M[1 . . n]$.
- initially $\Phi=0$; throughout $\Phi \leq n$.
- (2) increases $\Phi$ by $1 \Rightarrow \leq 2 n$ recursive calls.
- Overall running time of M-Compute-Opt $(n)$ is $O(n)$


## Those who cannot remember the past are condemned to repeat it. <br> - Dynamic Programming

## Weighted interval scheduling: finding a solution

Q. DP algorithm computes optimal value. How to find optimal solution? A. Make a second pass by calling Find-Solution( $n$ ).

```
Find-Solution(j)
IF \((j=0)\)
    Return \(\varnothing\).
ELSE IF \(\left(w_{j}+M[p[j]]>M[j-1]\right)\)
    Return \(\{j\} \cup \operatorname{Find}-\operatorname{Solution}(p[j])\).
ElSE
    Return Find-Solution \((j-1)\).
        \(M[j]=\max \left\{M[j-1], w_{j}+M[p[j]]\right\}\).
```

Analysis. \# of recursive calls $\leq n \Rightarrow O(n)$.

## Weighted interval scheduling: bottom-up dynamic programming

Bottom-up dynamic programming. Unwind recursion.

$$
\text { Воттом-Up }\left(n, s_{1}, \ldots, s_{n}, f_{1}, \ldots, f_{n}, w_{1}, \ldots, w_{n}\right)
$$

Sort jobs by finish time and renumber so that $f_{1} \leq f_{2} \leq \ldots \leq f_{n}$.
Compute $p[1], p[2], \ldots, p[n]$.
$M[0] \leftarrow 0 . \quad$ previously computed values
FOR $j=1$ TO $n$
 $M[j] \leftarrow \max \left\{M[j-1], w_{j}+M[p[j]]\right\}$.

Running time. The bottom-up version takes $O(n \log n)$ time.

## DYNAMIC PROGRAMMING

## PARENTHESIZATION PROBLEM

## PARENTHESIZATION PROBLEM

- given sequence of matrices $\left\langle A_{1}, \ldots, A_{n}\right\rangle$ of dimension $p_{0} \times p_{1}, p_{1} \times p_{2}, \ldots, p_{n-1} \times p_{n}$
- compute associative product $A_{1} \cdot A_{2} \cdot \ldots \cdot A_{n}$ using sequence of normal matrix multiplies in the order that minimizes cost
- cost to multiply $i \times j$ with $j \times k$ is $i j k$


## Parenthesization Example



## NUMBER OF PARENTHESIZATIONS

- denote the number of alternative parenthesizations if a sequence of $n$ matrices by $P(n)$

$$
P(n)= \begin{cases}1 & \text { pro } n=1 \\ \sum_{k=1}^{n-1} P(k) \cdot P(n-k) & \text { pro } n>1\end{cases}
$$

- the solution to the recurrence is $\Omega\left(2^{n}\right)$
- brute force algorithm is exponential


## STRUCTURE OF AN OPTIMAL PARENTHESIZATION

to compute the product $A_{i} \cdot A_{i+1} \cdot \ldots \cdot A_{j}$ we have first for an index $k$ compute products $A_{i} \cdot \ldots \cdot A_{k}$ and $A_{k+1} \cdot \ldots \cdot A_{j}$

Q: which index $k$ ?
A: we have to examine all possibilities

Q: how to compute products $A_{i} \cdot \ldots \cdot A_{k}$ and $A_{k+1} \cdot \ldots \cdot A_{j}$ ?
A: in an optimal way $\Longrightarrow$ subproblems of the original problem

## COST OF AN OPTIMAL SOLUTION

- given matrices $\left\langle A_{1}, \ldots, A_{n}\right\rangle$ of dimension

$$
p_{0} \times p_{1}, p_{1} \times p_{2}, \ldots, p_{n-1} \times p_{n}
$$

- let us define a function $m:\{1, \ldots, n\} \times\{1, \ldots, n\} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$ where $m(i, j)$ is the minimal cost to multiply $A_{i} \cdot A_{i+1} \cdot \ldots \cdot A_{j}$
- we can define $m(i, j)$ recursively as follows

$$
m(i, j) \stackrel{\text { def }}{=} \begin{cases}0 & \text { if } i=j \\ \min _{i \leq k<j}\left\{m(i, k)+m(k+1, j)+p_{i-1} p_{k} p_{j}\right\} & \text { if } i<j\end{cases}
$$

- the optimal cost to multiply the sequence $\left\langle A_{1}, \ldots, A_{n}\right\rangle$ is $m(1, n)$


## COMPUTING THE COST FUNCTION RECURSIVELY

## Function $\mathrm{M}(i, j)$

Input: $i, j$
Output: value $m(i, j)$
1 if $i=j$ then return 0 else
$2 \mid$ return $\min _{i \leq k<j}\left\{M(i, k)+M(k+1, j)+p_{i-1} p_{k} p_{j}\right\}$

- let $T(n)$ denote the time complexity of the computation of $m(i, j)$ for $n=j-i+1$
- for $n>0$ and a constant $d$

$$
T(n)=\sum_{k=1}^{n-1}(T(k)+T(n-k))+d n=2 \sum_{k=1}^{n-1} T(k)+d n
$$

- $T(n)=\Theta\left(3^{n}\right)$


## COMPUTING THE COST FUNCTION BOTTOM UP

- make use of dependencies
- the order is given by the number of matrices
- $m(1,1), m(2,2), \ldots, m(n, n)$
$m(1,2), m(2,3) \ldots, m(n-1, n)$
$m(1,3), m(2,4) \ldots, m(n-2, n)$
$m(1, n-1), m(2, n)$
$m(1, n)$


## COMPUTING THE COST FUNCTION BOTTOM UP

Algorithm: Matrix Multiplication
Input: dimensions $p_{0}, p_{1}, p_{2}, \ldots, p_{n}$ of matrices
Output: value $m(1, n)$
$\mathbf{1}$ for $i=1$ to $n$ do $(M(i, i) \leftarrow 0$
2 for $r=2$ to $n$ do
3 for $i=1$ to $n-r+1$ do
$4 \quad j \leftarrow i+r-1$

for $k=i$ to $j-1$ do
$q \leftarrow M(i, k)+M(k+1, j)+p_{i-1} p_{k} p_{j}$
if $q<M(i, j)$ then $M(i, j) \leftarrow q$
9 return $M(1, n)$

## COMPUTING THE OPTIMAL SOLUTION BOTTOM UP

modify line 8 to
if $q<M(i, j)$ then $M(i, j) \leftarrow q, S(i, j) \leftarrow k$

Function Parenthesis $(S, i, j)$
Input: function $S$, indices $i, j$
Output: parenthetization of the sequence $A_{i}, \ldots, A_{j}$
1 if $i=j$ then print $A_{i}$ else
2 print '('
; Parenthesis $((S, i, S(i, j)))$
Parenthesis $((S, S(i, j)+1, j))$ print ')'

## ALTERNATIVE SOLUTIONS

- $m(1,1), m(2,2), \ldots, m(n, n)$
$m(1,2), m(2,3) \ldots, m(n-1, n)$
$m(1,3), m(2,4) \ldots, m(n-2, n)$
$m(1, n)$
- $m(n, n), m(n-1, n-1), \ldots, m(1,1)$
$m(n-1, n), m(n-2, n-1) \ldots, m(1,2)$
$m(n-2, n), m(n-3, n-1) \ldots, m(1,3)$
$m(1, n)$
- $m(n, n)$
$m(n-1, n-1), m(n-1, n)$
$m(n-2, n-2), m(n-2, n-1), m(n-2, n)$
$m(1,1), m(1,2), \ldots, m(1, n)$
- $m(1,1)$
$m(2,2), m(1,2)$
$m(3,3), m(2,3), m(1,3)$
$m(n, n), m(n-1, n), \ldots, m(1, n)$


## DYNAMIC PROGRAMMING

KNAPSACK PROBLEM


## 6. Dynamic Programming I

> weighted interval scheduling
> segmented least squares

- knapsack problem
- RNA secondary structure


## Knapsack problem

Goal. Pack knapsack so as to maximize total value.

- There are $n$ items: item $i$ provides value $v_{i}>0$ and weighs $w_{i}>0$.
- Knapsack has weight capacity of $W$.

Assumption. All input values are integral.

Ex. $\{1,2,5\}$ has value $\$ 35$ (and weight 10 ).
Ex. $\{3,4\}$ has value $\$ 40$ (and weight 11 ).


| $i$ | $v_{i}$ | $w_{i}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | $\$ 1$ | 1 kg |
| 2 | $\$ 6$ | 2 kg |
| 3 | $\$ 18$ | 5 kg |
| 4 | $\$ 22$ | 6 kg |
| 5 | $\$ 28$ | 7 kg |

knapsack instance
(weight limit $\mathrm{W}=11$ )

## Dynamic programming: adding a new variable

Def. $O P T(i, w)=$ max-profit subset of items $1, \ldots, i$ with weight limit $w$.
Goal. OPT( $n, W$ ).

Case 1. $O P T(i, w)$ does not select item $i$.

- $O P T(i, w)$ selects best of $\{1,2, \ldots, i-1\}$ using weight limit $w$.

Case 2. $O P T(i, w)$ selects item $i$.

- Collect value $v_{i}$.
- New weight limit $=w-w_{i}$.
- $O P T(i, w)$ selects best of $\{1,2, \ldots, i-1\}$ using this new weight limit.

Bellman equation.
$O P T(i, w)= \begin{cases}0 & \text { if } i=0 \\ O P T(i-1, w) & \text { if } w_{i}>w \\ \max \left\{O P T(i-1, w), v_{i}+O P T\left(i-1, w-w_{i}\right)\right\} & \text { otherwise }\end{cases}$

Knapsack problem: bottom-up dynamic programming
$\operatorname{KnAPSACK}\left(n, W, w_{1}, \ldots, w_{n}, v_{1}, \ldots, v_{n}\right)$
FOR $w=0$ Tо $W$

$$
M[0, w] \leftarrow 0
$$

FOR $i=1$ TO $n$
FOR $w=0$ то $W$

$$
\operatorname{IF}\left(w_{i}>w\right) M[i, w] \leftarrow M[i-1, w] .
$$

previously computed values

$$
\text { ELSE } \quad M[i, w] \leftarrow \max \left\{M[i-1, w], v_{i}+M\left[i-1, w-w_{i}\right]\right\} .
$$

RETURN $M[n, W]$.
$O P T(i, w)= \begin{cases}0 & \text { if } i=0 \\ O P T(i-1, w) & \text { if } w_{i}>w \\ \max \left\{O P T(i-1, w), v_{i}+O P T\left(i-1, w-w_{i}\right)\right\} & \text { otherwise }\end{cases}$

Knapsack problem: bottom-up dynamic programming demo

| $i$ | $v_{i}$ | $w_{i}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | $\$ 1$ | 1 kg |
| 2 | $\$ 6$ | 2 kg |
| 3 | $\$ 18$ | 5 kg |
| 4 | $\$ 22$ | 6 kg |
| 5 | $\$ 28$ | 7 kg |$\quad$| 0 |  |
| :--- | :--- |
| $O P T(i, w)=1, w)$ | if $i=0$ |
| $\max \left\{O P T(i-1, w), v_{i}+O P T\left(i-1, w-w_{i}\right\}\right.$ | otherwise |
|  |  |

weight limit w

|  |  | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| subset of items $1, \ldots$, i | \{ \} | 0$\uparrow$0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
|  | \{ 1 \} |  | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
|  | \{ 1, 2 \} | 0 | 1 | 6 | 7 | 7 | 7 | 7 | 7 | 7 | 7 | 7 | 7 |
|  | \{ 1, 2, 3 \} | 0 | 1 | 6 | 7 | 7 | 18 | 19 | 24 | 25 | 25 | 25 | 25 |
|  | \{ 1, 2, 3, 4 \} | 0 | 1 | 6 | 7 | 7 | 18 | 22 | 24 | 28 | 29 | 29 | 40 |
|  | $\{1,2,3,4,5\}$ | 0 | 1 | 6 | 7 | 7 | 18 | 22 | 28 | 29 | 34 | 35 | (40) |

OPT(i, w) = max-profit subset of items $1, \ldots, i$ with weight limit $w$.

## Knapsack problem: running time

Theorem. The DP algorithm solves the knapsack problem with $n$ items and maximum weight $W$ in $\Theta(n W)$ time and $\Theta(n W)$ space.
Pf.

- Takes $O(1)$ time per table entry.
weights are integers
- There are $\Theta(n W)$ table entries.
- After computing optimal values, can trace back to find solution: $O P T(i, w)$ takes item $i$ iff $M[i, w]>M[i-1, w]$.

Dynamic programming: quiz 4
Does there exist a poly-time algorithm for the knapsack problem?
A. Yes, because the DP algorithm takes $\Theta(n W)$ time.
B. No, because $\Theta(n W)$ is not a polynomial function of the input size.
C. No, because the problem is NP-hard.
D. Unknown.

## DYNAMIC PROGRAMMING

SEQUENCE ALIGNEMENT


## 6. Dynamic Programming II

- sequence alignment
, Hirschberg's algorithm
- Bellman-Ford-Moore algorithm
- distance-vector protocals
- negative cycles


## String similarity

Q. How similar are two strings?

Ex. ocurrance and occurrence.


## Edit distance

Edit distance. [Levenshtein 1966, Needleman-Wunsch 1970]

- Gap penalty $\delta$; mismatch penalty $\alpha_{p q}$.
- Cost = sum of gap and mismatch penalties.


Applications. Bioinformatics, spell correction, machine translation, speech recognition, information extraction, ...
Spokesperson confirms senior government adviser was found Spokesperson said the senior adviser was found

## BLOSUM matrix for proteins

|  | A | R | N | D | C | Q | E | G | H | I | L | K | M | F | P | S | T | W | Y | V |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| A | 7 | -3 | -3 | -3 | -1 | -2 | -2 | 0 | -3 | -3 | -3 | -1 | -2 | -4 | -1 | 2 | 0 | -5 | -4 | -1 |
| R | -3 | 9 | -1 | -3 | -6 | 1 | -1 | -4 | 0 | -5 | -4 | 3 | -3 | -5 | -3 | -2 | -2 | -5 | -4 | -4 |
| N | -3 | -1 | 9 | 2 | -5 | 0 | -1 | -1 | 1 | -6 | -6 | 0 | -4 | -6 | -4 | 1 | 0 | -7 | -4 | -5 |
| D | -3 | -3 | 2 | 10 | -7 | -1 | 2 | -3 | -2 | -7 | -7 | -2 | -6 | -6 | -3 | -1 | -2 | -8 | -6 | -6 |
| C | -1 | -6 | -5 | -7 | 13 | -5 | -7 | -6 | -7 | -2 | -3 | -6 | -3 | -4 | -6 | -2 | -2 | -5 | -5 | -2 |
| Q | -2 | 1 | 0 | -1 | -5 | 9 | 3 | -4 | 1 | -5 | -4 | 2 | -1 | -5 | -3 | -1 | -1 | -4 | -3 | -4 |
| E | -2 | -1 | -1 | 2 | -7 | 3 | 8 | -4 | 0 | -6 | -6 | 1 | -4 | -6 | -2 | -1 | -2 | -6 | -5 | -4 |
| G | 0 | -4 | -1 | -3 | -6 | -4 | -4 | 9 | -4 | -7 | -7 | -3 | -5 | -6 | -5 | -1 | -3 | -6 | -6 | -6 |
| H | -3 | 0 | 1 | -2 | -7 | 1 | 0 | -4 | 12 | -6 | -5 | -1 | -4 | -2 | -4 | -2 | -3 | -4 | 3 | -5 |
| I | -3 | -5 | -6 | -7 | -2 | -5 | -6 | -7 | -6 | 7 | 2 | -5 | 2 | -1 | -5 | -4 | -2 | -5 | -3 | 4 |
| L | -3 | -4 | -6 | -7 | -3 | -4 | -6 | -7 | -5 | 2 | 6 | -4 | 3 | 0 | -5 | -4 | -3 | -4 | -2 | 1 |
| K | -1 | 3 | 0 | -2 | -6 | 2 | 1 | -3 | -1 | -5 | -4 | 8 | -3 | -5 | -2 | -1 | -1 | -6 | -4 | -4 |
| M | -2 | -3 | -4 | -6 | -3 | -1 | -4 | -5 | -4 | 2 | 3 | -3 | 9 | 0 | -4 | -3 | -1 | -3 | -3 | 1 |
| F | -4 | -5 | -6 | -6 | -4 | -5 | -6 | -6 | -2 | -1 | 0 | -5 | 0 | 10 | -6 | -4 | -4 | 0 | 4 | -2 |
| P | -1 | -3 | -4 | -3 | -6 | -3 | -2 | -5 | -4 | -5 | -5 | -2 | -4 | -6 | 12 | -2 | -3 | -7 | -6 | -4 |
| S | 2 | -2 | 1 | -1 | -2 | -1 | -1 | -1 | -2 | -4 | -4 | -1 | -3 | -4 | -2 | 7 | 2 | -6 | -3 | -3 |
| T | 0 | -2 | 0 | -2 | -2 | -1 | -2 | -3 | -3 | -2 | -3 | -1 | -1 | -4 | -3 | 2 | 8 | -5 | -3 | 0 |
| W | -5 | -5 | -7 | -8 | -5 | -4 | -6 | -6 | -4 | -5 | -4 | -6 | -3 | 0 | -7 | -6 | -5 | 16 | 3 | -5 |
| Y | -4 | -4 | -4 | -6 | -5 | -3 | -5 | -6 | 3 | -3 | -2 | -4 | -3 | 4 | -6 | -3 | -3 | 3 | 11 | -3 |
| V | -1 | -4 | -5 | -6 | -2 | -4 | -4 | -6 | -5 | 4 | 1 | -4 | 1 | -2 | -4 | -3 | 0 | -5 | -3 | 7 |

Dynamic programming: quiz 1
What is edit distance between these two strings?
PALETTE PALATE

Assume gap penalty $=2$ and mismatch penalty $=1$.
A. 1
B. 2
C. 3
D. 4
E. 5

## Sequence alignment

Goal. Given two strings $x_{1} x_{2} \ldots x_{m}$ and $y_{1} y_{2} \ldots y_{n}$, find a min-cost alignment.

Def. An alignment $M$ is a set of ordered pairs $x_{i}-y_{j}$ such that each character appears in at most one pair and no crossings.


Def. The cost of an alignment $M$ is:

$$
\operatorname{cost}(M)=\underbrace{\sum_{\left(x_{i}, y_{j}\right) \in M} \alpha_{x_{i} y_{j}}}_{\text {mismatch }}+\underbrace{\sum_{i: x_{i} \text { unmatched }} \delta+\sum_{j: y_{j} \text { unmatched }} \delta}_{\text {gap }}
$$

| $x_{1}$ | $x_{2}$ | $x_{3}$ | $x_{4}$ | $x_{5}$ |  | $x_{6}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| C | T | A | C | C | - | C |
| - | T | A | C | A | T | C |
|  | $y_{1}$ | $y_{2}$ | $y_{3}$ | $y_{4}$ | $y_{5}$ | $y_{6}$ |

an alignment of CTACCG and TACATG
$M=\left\{x_{2}-y_{1}, x_{3}-y_{2}, x_{4}-y_{3}, x_{5}-y_{4}, x_{6}-y_{6}\right\}$

## Sequence alignment: problem structure

Def. $O P T(i, j)=$ min cost of aligning prefix strings $x_{1} x_{2} \ldots x_{i}$ and $y_{1} y_{2} \ldots y_{j}$. Goal. $\operatorname{OPT}(m, n)$.

Case 1. $O P T(i, j)$ matches $x_{i}-y_{j}$.
Pay mismatch for $x_{i}-y_{j}+\min$ cost of aligning $x_{1} x_{2} \ldots x_{i-1}$ and $y_{1} y_{2} \ldots y_{j-1}$.

Case 2a. $O P T(i, j)$ leaves $x_{i}$ unmatched.
Pay gap for $x_{i}+\min$ cost of aligning $x_{1} x_{2} \ldots x_{i-1}$ and $y_{1} y_{2} \ldots y_{j}$.

Case 2 b . $O P T(i, j)$ leaves $y_{j}$ unmatched.
Pay gap for $y_{j}+$ min cost of aligning $x_{1} x_{2} \ldots x_{i}$ and $y_{1} y_{2} \ldots y_{j-1}$.

Bellman equation.

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\text { tion. } & \text { if } i(i, j)= \begin{cases}j \delta & \text { if } i=0 \\
i \delta & \text { if } j=0\end{cases} \\
\min \left\{\begin{array}{l}
\alpha_{x_{i} y_{j}}+O P T(i-1, j-1) \\
\delta+O P T(i-1, j) \\
\delta+O P T(i, j-1)
\end{array}\right. & \text { otherwise }
\end{array}
$$

## Sequence alignment: analysis

Theorem. The DP algorithm computes the edit distance (and an optimal alignment) of two strings of lengths $m$ and $n$ in $\Theta(m n)$ time and space. Pf.

- Algorithm computes edit distance.
- Can trace back to extract optimal alignment itself. -

Theorem. [Backurs-Indyk 2015] If can compute edit distance of two strings of length $n$ in $O\left(n^{2-\varepsilon}\right)$ time for some constant $\varepsilon>0$, then can solve SAT with $n$ variables and $m$ clauses in poly(m) $2^{(1-\delta) n}$ time for some constant $\delta>0$.


Sequence alignment: traceback

|  |  | S | I | M | I | L | A | R | I | T | Y |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | 2 | 4 | 6 | 8 | 10 | 12 | 14 | 16 | 18 | 20 |
| I | 2 | 4 |  | 3 |  | 4 | 6 | 8 | 7 | 9 | 11 |
| D | 4 | 6 | 3 | 3 | 4 | 4 | 6 | 8 | 9 | 9 | 11 |
| E | 6 | 8 | 5 | 5 | 6 | 6 | 6 | 8 | 10 | 11 | 11 |
| N | 8 | 10 | 7 | 7 | 8 | 8 | 8 | 8 | 10 | 12 | 13 |
| T | 10 | 12 | 9 | 9 | 9 | 10 | 10 | 10 | 10 | 9 | 11 |
| I | 12 | 14 | 8 | 10 | 8 | 10 | 12 | 12 | 9 | 11 | 11 |
| T | 14 | 16 | 10 | 10 | 10 | 10 | 12 | 14 | 11 | 8 | 11 |
| Y | 16 | 18 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 14 | 13 | 10 |  |

## Sequence alignment: analysis

Theorem. The DP algorithm computes the edit distance (and an optimal alignment) of two strings of lengths $m$ and $n$ in $\Theta(m n)$ time and space. Pf.

- Algorithm computes edit distance.
- Can trace back to extract optimal alignment itself. -

Theorem. [Backurs-Indyk 2015] If can compute edit distance of two strings of length $n$ in $O\left(n^{2-\varepsilon}\right)$ time for some constant $\varepsilon>0$, then can solve SAT with $n$ variables and $m$ clauses in poly(m) $2^{(1-\delta) n}$ time for some constant $\delta>0$.


Dynamic programming: quiz 3

## It is easy to modify the DP algorithm for edit distance to...

A. Compute edit distance in $O(m n)$ time and $O(m+n)$ space.
B. Compute an optimal alignment in $O(m n)$ time and $O(m+n)$ space.
C. Both $A$ and $B$.
D. Neither A nor B.

$$
O P T(i, j)= \begin{cases}j \delta & \text { if } i=0 \\
i \delta & \text { if } j=0 \\
\min \left\{\begin{array}{l}
\alpha_{x_{i} y_{j}}+O P T(i-1, j-1) \\
\delta+O P T(i-1, j) \\
\delta+O P T(i, j-1)
\end{array}\right. & \text { otherwise }\end{cases}
$$

## DYNAMIC PROGRAMMING

SHORTEST PATHS - BELLMAN-FORD ALGORITHM

## Shortest paths with negative weights

Shortest-path problem. Given a digraph $G=(V, E)$, with arbitrary edge lengths $\ell_{v w}$, find shortest path from source node $s$ to destination node $t$.

length of shortest path from sto $\mathbf{t}=9 \mathbf{- 3 - 6 + 1 1 = 1 1}$

## Shortest paths with negative weights: failed attempts

Dijkstra. May not produce shortest paths when edge lengths are negative.


Dijkstra selects the vertices in the order $s, t, w, v$
But shortest path from $s$ to $t$ is $s \rightarrow v \rightarrow w \rightarrow t$.

Reweighting. Adding a constant to every edge length does not necessarily make Dijkstra's algorithm produce shortest paths.


Adding 8 to each edge weight changes the shortest path from $s \rightarrow v \rightarrow w \rightarrow t$ to $s \rightarrow t$.

## Negative cycles

Def. A negative cycle is a directed cycle for which the sum of its edge lengths is negative.

a negative cycle w: $\quad \ell(W)=\sum_{e \in W} \ell_{e}<0$

## Shortest paths and negative cycles

Lemma 1. If some $v \rightarrow t$ path contains a negative cycle, then there does not exist a shortest $v \rightarrow t$ path.

Pf. If there exists such a cycle $W$, then can build a $v \rightarrow t$ path of arbitrarily negative length by detouring around $W$ as many times as desired. •


## Shortest paths and negative cycles

Lemma 2. If $G$ has no negative cycles, then there exists a shortest $v \rightarrow t$ path that is simple (and has $\leq n-1$ edges).

Pf.

- Among all shortest $v \rightarrow t$ paths, consider one that uses the fewest edges.
- If that path $P$ contains a directed cycle $W$, can remove the portion of $P$ corresponding to $W$ without increasing its length. -



## Shortest-paths and negative-cycle problems

Single-destination shortest-paths problem. Given a digraph $G=(V, E)$ with edge lengths $\ell_{v w}$ (but no negative cycles) and a distinguished node $t$, find a shortest $v \rightarrow t$ path for every node $v$.

Negative-cycle problem. Given a digraph $G=(V, E)$ with edge lengths $\ell_{v w}$, find a negative cycle (if one exists).

shortest-paths tree

negative cycle

Dynamic programming: quiz 5

## Which subproblems to find shortest $v \rightarrow t$ paths for every node $v$ ?

A. $\quad \operatorname{OPT}(i, v)=$ length of shortest $v \rightarrow t$ path that uses exactly $i$ edges.
B. $\quad O P T(i, v)=$ length of shortest $v \rightarrow t$ path that uses at most edges.
C. Neither A nor B.

## Shortest paths with negative weights: dynamic programming

Def. $O P T(i, v)=$ length of shortest $v \rightarrow t$ path that uses $\leq i$ edges.

Goal. $\operatorname{OPT}(n-1, v)$ for each $v$.

Case 1. Shortest $v \rightarrow t$ path uses $\leq i-1$ edges.

- $O P T(i, v)=\operatorname{OPT}(i-1, v)$.
optimal substructure property
(proof via exchange argument)

Case 2. Shortest $v \rightarrow t$ path uses exactly $i$ edges.

- if ( $v, w$ ) is first edge in shortest such $v \rightarrow t$ path, incur a cost of $\ell_{v w}$.
- Then, select best $w \rightarrow t$ path using $\leq i-1$ edges.

Bellman equation.

$$
O P T(i, v)= \begin{cases}0 & \text { if } i=0 \text { and } v=t \\ \infty & \text { if } i=0 \text { and } v \neq t \\ \min \left\{O P T(i-1, v), \min _{(v, w) \in E}\left\{O P T(i-1, w)+\ell_{v w}\right\}\right\} & \text { if } i>0\end{cases}
$$

## Shortest paths with negative weights: implementation

Shortest-Paths $(V, E, \ell, t)$
Foreach node $v \in V$ :
$M[0, v] \leftarrow \infty$.
$M[0, t] \leftarrow 0$.
FOR $\mathrm{i}=1$ TO $n-1$
Foreach node $v \in V$ :
$M[i, v] \leftarrow M[i-1, v]$.
FOREACH edge $(v, w) \in E$ :

$$
M[i, v] \leftarrow \min \left\{M[i, v], M[i-1, w]+\ell_{v w}\right\} .
$$

## Shortest paths with negative weights: implementation

Theorem 1. Given a digraph $G=(V, E)$ with no negative cycles, the DP algorithm computes the length of a shortest $v \rightarrow t$ path for every node $v$ in $\Theta(m n)$ time and $\Theta\left(n^{2}\right)$ space.

Pf.

- Table requires $\Theta\left(n^{2}\right)$ space.
- Each iteration $i$ takes $\Theta(m)$ time since we examine each edge once. -


## Finding the shortest paths.

- Approach 1: Maintain successor $[i, v]$ that points to next node on a shortest $v \rightarrow t$ path using $\leq i$ edges.
- Approach 2: Compute optimal lengths $M[i, v]$ and consider only edges with $M[i, v]=M[i-1, w]+\ell_{v w}$. Any directed path in this subgraph is a shortest path.

Dynamic programming: quiz 6
It is easy to modify the DP algorithm for shortest paths to...
A. Compute lengths of shortest paths in $O(m n)$ time and $O(m+n)$ space.
B. Compute shortest paths in $O(m n)$ time and $O(m+n)$ space.
C. Both $A$ and $B$.
D. Neither A nor B.

## Shortest paths with negative weights: practical improvements

Space optimization. Maintain two 1D arrays (instead of 2D array).

- $d[v]$ = length of a shortest $v \rightarrow t$ path that we have found so far.
- successor $[v]=$ next node on a $v \rightarrow t$ path.

Performance optimization. If $d[w]$ was not updated in iteration $i-1$, then no reason to consider edges entering $w$ in iteration $i$.

## Bellman-Ford-Moore: efficient implementation

Bellman-Ford-Moore $(V, E, c, t)$
Foreach node $v \in V$ :
$d[v] \leftarrow \infty$.
successor $[v] \leftarrow$ null.
$d[t] \leftarrow 0$.
FOR $i=1$ TO $n-1$
Foreach node $w \in V$ :
IF ( $d[w]$ was updated in previous pass)
FOREACH edge $(v, w) \in E$ :

$$
\begin{gathered}
\text { IF }\left(d[v]>d[w]+\ell_{v w}\right) \\
d[v] \leftarrow d[w]+\ell_{v w} . \\
\text { successor }[v] \leftarrow w .
\end{gathered}
$$

pass $i$
$O(m)$ time

IF (no $d[\cdot]$ value changed in pass $i$ ) STOP.

Dynamic programming: quiz 7

## Which properties must hold after pass $i$ of Bellman-Ford-Moore?

A. $d[v]=$ length of a shortest $v \rightarrow t$ path using $\leq i$ edges.
B. $d[v]=$ length of a shortest $v \rightarrow t$ path using exactly $i$ edges.
C. Both $A$ and $B$.
D. Neither A nor B.

## Bellman-Ford-Moore: analysis

Lemma 3. For each node $v: d[v]$ is the length of some $v \rightarrow t$ path.
Lemma 4. For each node $v: d[v]$ is monotone non-increasing.

Lemma 5. After pass $i, d[v] \leq$ length of a shortest $v \rightarrow t$ path using $\leq i$ edges.
Pf. [ by induction on $i$ ]

- Base case: $i=0$.
- Assume true after pass $i$.
- Let $P$ be any $v \rightarrow t$ path with $\leq i+1$ edges.
- Let $(v, w)$ be first edge in $P$ and let $P^{\prime}$ be subpath from $w$ to $t$.
- By inductive hypothesis, at the end of pass $i, d[w] \leq c\left(P^{\prime}\right)$ because $P^{\prime}$ is a $w \rightarrow t$ path with $\leq i$ edges.
- After considering edge $(v, w)$ in pass $i+1$ :
and by Lemma 4,
$d[w]$ does not increase

$$
\begin{aligned}
d[v] & \leq \ell_{v w}+d[w] \\
\begin{array}{c}
\text { and by Lemma 4, } \\
d[v] \text { does not increase }
\end{array} & \leq \ell_{v w}+c\left(P^{\prime}\right) \\
& \ell(P) .
\end{aligned}
$$

## Bellman-Ford-Moore: analysis

Theorem 2. Assuming no negative cycles, Bellman-Ford-Moore computes the lengths of the shortest $v \rightarrow t$ paths in $O(m n)$ time and $\Theta(n)$ extra space. Pf. Lemma $2+$ Lemma 5. -

shortest path exists and
has at most $n-1$ edges

```
    after i passes,
d[v]}\leq\mathrm{ length of shortest path
    that uses }\leqi\mathrm{ edges
```

Remark. Bellman-Ford-Moore is typically faster in practice.

- Edge $(v, w)$ considered in pass $i+1$ only if $d[w]$ updated in pass $i$.
- If shortest path has $k$ edges, then algorithm finds it after $\leq k$ passes.


## Dynamic programming: quiz 8

Assuming no negative cycles, which properties must hold throughout Bellman-Ford-Moore?
A. Following successor[ $[$ ] pointers gives a directed $v \rightarrow t$ path.
B. If following successor $[v]$ pointers gives a directed $v \rightarrow t$ path, then the length of that $v \rightarrow t$ path is $d[v]$.
C. Both A and B.
D. Neither A nor B.

## Bellman-Ford-Moore: analysis

Claim. Throughout Bellman-Ford-Moore, following the successor[ v$]$ pointers gives a directed path from $v$ to $t$ of length $d[v]$.

Counterexample. Claim is false!

- Length of successor $v \rightarrow t$ path may be strictly shorter than $d[v]$.
consider nodes in order: $\mathbf{t}, \mathbf{1 , 2 , 3}$



## Bellman-Ford-Moore: analysis

Claim. Throughout Bellman-Ford-Moore, following the successor[ v$]$ pointers gives a directed path from $v$ to $t$ of length $d[v]$.

Counterexample. Claim is false!

- Length of successor $v \rightarrow t$ path may be strictly shorter than $d[v]$.
consider nodes in order: $\mathbf{t}, \mathbf{1 , 2 , 3}$



## Bellman-Ford-Moore: analysis

Claim. Throughout Bellman-Ford-Moore, following the suceessor[ v$]$ pointers gives a directed path from $v$ to $t$ of length $d[v]$.

Counterexample. Claim is false!

- Length of successor $v \rightarrow t$ path may be strictly shorter than $d[v]$.
- If negative cycle, successor graph may have directed cycles.
consider nodes in order: $\mathbf{t}, \mathbf{1 , 2 , 3 , 4}$



## Bellman-Ford-Moore: analysis

Claim. Throughout Bellman-Ford-Moore, following the suceessor[ v$]$ pointers gives a directed path from $v$ to $t$ of length $d[v]$.

Counterexample. Claim is false!

- Length of successor $v \rightarrow t$ path may be strictly shorter than $d[v]$.
- If negative cycle, successor graph may have directed cycles.
consider nodes in order: t, 1, 2, 3, 4



## Bellman-Ford-Moore: finding the shortest paths

Lemma 6. Any directed cycle $W$ in the successor graph is a negative cycle. Pf.

- If $\operatorname{successor}[v]=w$, we must have $d[v] \geq d[w]+\ell_{v w}$.
(LHS and RHS are equal when successor $[v]$ is set; $d[w]$ can only decrease; $d[v]$ decreases only when successor $[v]$ is reset)
- Let $v_{1} \rightarrow v_{2} \rightarrow \ldots \rightarrow v_{k} \rightarrow v_{1}$ be the sequence of nodes in a directed cycle $W$.
- Assume that $\left(v_{k}, v_{1}\right)$ is the last edge in $W$ added to the successor graph.
- Just prior to that: $d\left[v_{1}\right] \geq d\left[v_{2}\right]+\ell\left(v_{1}, v_{2}\right)$

$$
\begin{array}{cll}
d\left[v_{2}\right] & \geq d\left[v_{3}\right] & +\ell\left(v_{2}, v_{3}\right) \\
\vdots & \vdots & \vdots \\
d\left[v_{k-1}\right] & \geq d\left[v_{k}\right] & +\ell\left(v_{k-1}, v_{k}\right)
\end{array}
$$

$$
d\left[v_{k}\right] \quad>d\left[v_{1}\right]+\ell\left(v_{k}, v_{1}\right) \longleftarrow \begin{aligned}
& \text { holds with strict inequality } \\
& \text { since we are updating } d\left[v_{k}\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

- Adding inequalities yields $\ell\left(v_{1}, v_{2}\right)+\ell\left(v_{2}, v_{3}\right)+\ldots+\ell\left(v_{k-1}, v_{k}\right)+\ell\left(v_{k}, v_{1}\right)<0$. -
$W$ is a negative cycle


## Bellman-Ford-Moore: finding the shortest paths

Theorem 3. Assuming no negative cycles, Bellman-Ford-Moore finds shortest $v \rightarrow t$ paths for every node $v$ in $O(m n)$ time and $\Theta(n)$ extra space. Pf.

- The successor graph cannot have a directed cycle. [Lemma 6]
- Thus, following the successor pointers from $v$ yields a directed path to $t$.
- Let $v=v_{1} \rightarrow v_{2} \rightarrow \ldots \rightarrow v_{k}=t$ be the nodes along this path $P$.
- Upon termination, if successor $[v]=w$, we must have $d[v]=d[w]+\ell_{v w}$. (LHS and RHS are equal when successor $[v]$ is set; $d[\cdot]$ did not change)
- Thus, $d\left[v_{1}\right]=d\left[v_{2}\right]+\ell\left(v_{1}, v_{2}\right)$

$$
d\left[v_{2}\right]=d\left[v_{3}\right]+\ell\left(v_{2}, v_{3}\right)
$$

since algorithm terminated

$$
d\left[v_{k-1}\right]=d\left[v_{k}\right]+\ell\left(v_{k-1}, v_{k}\right)
$$

- Adding equations yields $d[v]=d[t]+\ell\left(v_{1}, v_{2}\right)+\ell\left(v_{2}, v_{3}\right)+\ldots+\ell\left(v_{k-1}, v_{k}\right)$.



## Single-source shortest paths with negative weights

| year | worst case | discovered by |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1955 | $O\left(n^{4}\right)$ | Shimbel |
| 1956 | $O\left(m n^{2} W\right)$ | Ford |
| 1958 | $O(m n)$ | Bellman, Moore |
| 1983 | $O\left(n^{3 / 4} m \log W\right)$ | Gabow |
| 1989 | $O\left(m n^{1 / 2} \log (n W)\right)$ | Gabow-Tarjan |
| 1993 | $O\left(m n^{1 / 2} \log W\right)$ | Goldberg |
| 2005 | $O\left(n^{2.38} W\right)$ | Sankowsi, Yuster-Zwick |
| 2016 | $\tilde{O}\left(n^{10 / 7} \log W\right)$ | Cohen-Mądry-Sankowski-Vladu |
| 20xx | $? ? ?$ |  |
| single-source shortest paths with weights between -W and w |  |  |

## DYNAMIC PROGRAMMING SUMMARY

## conditions

- number of diffferent subproblems is polynomial
- problem solution can be easily deduced from solutions of subproblems
- subproblems can be naturally ordered from smallest to largest
memoization
- simple to understand
- no need to dictate the ordering of subproblems
dynamic programming
- no recursion overhead
- lower space complexity
- simple complexity analysis

GREEDY ALGORITHMS

## Algorithmic paradigms

Greed. Build up a solution incrementally, myopically optimizing some local criterion.

Divide-and-conquer. Break up a problem into independent subproblems; solve each subproblem; combine solutions to subproblems to form solution to original problem.

Dynamic programming. Break up a problem into a series of overlapping subproblems, combine solutions to smaller subproblems to form solution to large subproblem.
fancy name for
caching intermediate results
in a table for later reuse

## GREEDY ALGORITHMS

## COIN CHANGING

## 4. Greedy Algorithms I



- coin changing
- interval scheduling
- interval partitioning
- scheduling to minimize lateness
p optimal caching


## Coin changing

Goal. Given U. S. currency denominations \{ 1, 5, 10, 25, 100$\}$, devise a method to pay amount to customer using fewest coins.

Ex. 34¢.


Cashier's algorithm. At each iteration, add coin of the largest value that does not take us past the amount to be paid.

Ex. \$2.89.


## Cashier's algorithm

At each iteration, add coin of the largest value that does not take us past the amount to be paid.

CASHIERS-ALGORITHM $\left(x, c_{1}, c_{2}, \ldots, c_{n}\right)$
SORT $n$ coin denominations so that $0<c_{1}<c_{2}<\ldots<c_{n}$.
$S \longleftarrow \varnothing$. $\longleftarrow$ multiset of coins selected
While ( $x>0$ )
$k \leftarrow$ largest coin denomination $c_{k}$ such that $c_{k} \leq x$.
IF no such $k$, RETURN "no solution."
ELSE

$$
\begin{aligned}
& x \leftarrow x-c_{k} . \\
& S \leftarrow S \cup\{k\} .
\end{aligned}
$$

RETURN $S$.

Greedy algorithms I: quiz 1
Is the cashier's algorithm optimal?
A. Yes, greedy algorithms are always optimal.
B. Yes, for any set of coin denominations $c_{1}<c_{2}<\ldots<c_{n}$ provided $c_{1}=1$.
C. Yes, because of special properties of U.S. coin denominations.
D. No.


## Cashier's algorithm (for arbitrary coin denominations)

Q. Is cashier's algorithm optimal for any set of denominations?
A. No. Consider U.S. postage: 1, 10, $21,34,70,100,350,1225,1500$.

- Cashier's algorithm: $140 ष=100+34+1+1+1+1+1+1$.
- Optimal: $140 ¢=70+70$.

A. No. It may not even lead to a feasible solution if $c_{1}>1: 7,8,9$.
- Cashier's algorithm: 15\$ = $9+$ ?
- Optimal: $15 ¢=7+8$.


## Properties of any optimal solution (for U.S. coin denominations)

Property. Number of pennies $\leq 4$.
Pf. Replace 5 pennies with 1 nickel.

Property. Number of nickels $\leq 1$.
Property. Number of quarters $\leq 3$.

Property. Number of nickels + number of dimes $\leq 2$.
Pf.

- Recall: $\leq 1$ nickel.
- Replace 3 dimes and 0 nickels with 1 quarter and 1 nickel;
- Replace 2 dimes and 1 nickel with 1 quarter.

dollars (100థ)

quarters (25థ)

dimes (10థ)

nickels (5థ)

pennies (1థ)


## Optimality of cashier's algorithm (for U.S. coin denominations)

Theorem. Cashier's algorithm is optimal for U.S. coins $\{1,5,10,25,100\}$. Pf. [ by induction on amount to be paid $x$ ]

- Consider optimal way to change $c_{k} \leq x<c_{k+1}$ : greedy takes coin $k$.
- We claim that any optimal solution must take coin $k$.
- if not, it needs enough coins of type $c_{1}, \ldots, c_{k-1}$ to add up to $x$
- table below indicates no optimal solution can do this
- Problem reduces to coin-changing $x-c_{k}$ cents, which, by induction, is optimally solved by cashier's algorithm.

| $k$ | $c_{k}$ | all optimal solutions <br> must satisfy | max value of coin denominations <br> $c_{1}, c_{2}, \ldots, c_{k-1}$ in any optimal solution |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | 1 | $P \leq 4$ | - |
| 2 | 5 | $N \leq 1$ | 4 |
| 3 | 10 | $N+D \leq 2$ | $4+5=9$ |
| 4 | 25 | $Q \leq 3$ | $20+4=24$ |
| 5 | 100 | no limit | $75+24=99$ |

## GREEDY ALGORITHMS

INTERVAL SCHEDULING


## 4. Greedy Algorithms I

> coin changing

- interval scheduling
- interval partitioning
- scheduling to minimize lateness
- optimal caching

Section 4.1

## Interval scheduling

- Job $j$ starts at $s_{j}$ and finishes at $f_{j}$.
- Two jobs compatible if they don't overlap.
- Goal: find maximum subset of mutually compatible jobs.


Consider jobs in some order, taking each job provided it's compatible with the ones already taken. Which rule is optimal?
A. [Earliest start time] Consider jobs in ascending order of $s_{j}$.
B. [Earliest finish time] Consider jobs in ascending order of $f_{j}$.
C. [Shortest interval] Consider jobs in ascending order of $f_{j}-s_{j}$.
D. None of the above.

## Interval scheduling: earliest-finish-time-first algorithm

## Earliest-Finish-Time-First $\left(n, s_{1}, s_{2}, \ldots, s_{n}, f_{1}, f_{2}, \ldots, f_{n}\right)$

SORT jobs by finish times and renumber so that $f_{1} \leq f_{2} \leq \ldots \leq f_{n}$.
$S \longleftarrow \varnothing . \longleftarrow$ set of jobs selected
FOR $j=1$ TO $n$
IF job $j$ is compatible with $S$

$$
S \leftarrow S \cup\{j\} .
$$

RETURN $S$.

Proposition. Can implement earliest-finish-time first in $O(n \log n)$ time.

- Keep track of job $j^{*}$ that was added last to $S$.
- Job $j$ is compatible with $S$ iff $s_{j} \geq f_{j^{*}}$.
- Sorting by finish times takes $O(n \log n)$ time.


## Interval scheduling: analysis of earliest-finish-time-first algorithm

Theorem. The earliest-finish-time-first algorithm is optimal.

## Pf. [by contradiction]

- Assume greedy is not optimal, and let's see what happens.
- Let $i_{1}, i_{2}, \ldots i_{k}$ denote set of jobs selected by greedy.
- Let $j_{1}, j_{2}, \ldots j_{m}$ denote set of jobs in an optimal solution with $i_{1}=j_{1}, i_{2}=j_{2}, \ldots, i_{r}=j_{r}$ for the largest possible value of $r$.



## Interval scheduling: analysis of earliest-finish-time-first algorithm

Theorem. The earliest-finish-time-first algorithm is optimal.

## Pf. [by contradiction]

- Assume greedy is not optimal, and let's see what happens.
- Let $i_{1}, i_{2}, \ldots i_{k}$ denote set of jobs selected by greedy.
- Let $j_{1}, j_{2}, \ldots j_{m}$ denote set of jobs in an optimal solution with $i_{1}=j_{1}, i_{2}=j_{2}, \ldots, i_{r}=j_{r}$ for the largest possible value of $r$.


Suppose that each job also has a positive weight and the goal is to find a maximum weight subset of mutually compatible intervals. Is the earliest-finish-time-first algorithm still optimal?
A. Yes, because greedy algorithms are always optimal.
B. Yes, because the same proof of correctness is valid.
C. No, because the same proof of correctness is no longer valid.
D. No, because you could assign a huge weight to a job that overlaps the job with the earliest finish time.

## GREEDY ALGORITHMS

INTERVAL PARTITIONING


## 4. Greedy Algorithms I

> coin changing

- interval scheduling
- interval partitioning
> scheduling to minimize lateness
- optimal caching

Section 4.1

## Interval partitioning

- Lecture $j$ starts at $s_{j}$ and finishes at $f_{j}$.
- Goal: find minimum number of classrooms to schedule all lectures so that no two lectures occur at the same time in the same room.

Ex. This schedule uses 4 classrooms to schedule 10 lectures.


## Interval partitioning

- Lecture $j$ starts at $s_{j}$ and finishes at $f_{j}$.
- Goal: find minimum number of classrooms to schedule all lectures so that no two lectures occur at the same time in the same room.

Ex. This schedule uses 3 classrooms to schedule 10 lectures.


Consider lectures in some order, assigning each lecture to first available classroom (opening a new classroom if none is available). Which rule is optimal?
A. [Earliest start time] Consider lectures in ascending order of $s_{j}$.
B. [Earliest finish time] Consider lectures in ascending order of $f_{j}$.
C. [Shortest interval] Consider lectures in ascending order of $f_{j}-s_{j}$.
D. None of the above.

## Interval partitioning: earliest-start-time-first algorithm

EARLIEST-Start-Time-First $\left(n, s_{1}, s_{2}, \ldots, s_{n}, f_{1}, f_{2}, \ldots, f_{n}\right)$
Sort lectures by start times and renumber so that $s_{1} \leq s_{2} \leq \ldots \leq s_{n}$.
$d \leftarrow 0$. $\longleftarrow$ number of allocated classrooms
FOR $j=1$ TO $n$
IF lecture $j$ is compatible with some classroom
Schedule lecture $j$ in any such classroom $k$.
ElSE
Allocate a new classroom $d+1$.
Schedule lecture $j$ in classroom $d+1$.

$$
d \leftarrow d+1 .
$$

RETURN schedule.

## Interval partitioning: earliest-start-time-first algorithm

Proposition. The earliest-start-time-first algorithm can be implemented in $O(n \log n)$ time.

Pf. Store classrooms in a priority queue (key = finish time of its last lecture).

- To determine whether lecture $j$ is compatible with some classroom, compare $s_{j}$ to key of $\min$ classroom $k$ in priority queue.
- To add lecture $j$ to classroom $k$, increase key of classroom $k$ to $f_{j}$.
- Total number of priority queue operations is $O(n)$.
- Sorting by start times takes $O(n \log n)$ time.

Remark. This implementation chooses a classroom $k$ whose finish time of its last lecture is the earliest.

## Interval partitioning: lower bound on optimal solution

Def. The depth of a set of open intervals is the maximum number of intervals that contain any given point.

Key observation. Number of classrooms needed $\geq$ depth.
Q. Does minimum number of classrooms needed always equal depth?
A. Yes! Moreover, earliest-start-time-first algorithm finds a schedule whose number of classrooms equals the depth.


## Interval partitioning: analysis of earliest-start-time-first algorithm

Observation. The earliest-start-time first algorithm never schedules two incompatible lectures in the same classroom.

Theorem. Earliest-start-time-first algorithm is optimal.
Pf.

- Let $d=$ number of classrooms that the algorithm allocates.
- Classroom $d$ is opened because we needed to schedule a lecture, say $j$, that is incompatible with a lecture in each of $d-1$ other classrooms.
- Thus, these $d$ lectures each end after $s_{j}$.
- Since we sorted by start time, each of these incompatible lectures start no later than $s_{j}$.
- Thus, we have $d$ lectures overlapping at time $s_{j}+\varepsilon$.
- Key observation $\Rightarrow$ all schedules use $\geq d$ classrooms. -


## GREEDY ALGORITHMS

## SCHEDULING TO MINIMIZE LATENESS



## 4. Greedy Algorithms I

> coin changing

- interval scheduling
- interval nartitioning
- scheduling to minimize lateness
p optimal caching


## Scheduling to minimizing lateness

- Single resource processes one job at a time.
- Job $j$ requires $t_{j}$ units of processing time and is due at time $d_{j}$.
- If $j$ starts at time $s_{j}$, it finishes at time $f_{j}=s_{j}+t_{j}$.
- Lateness: $\ell_{j}=\max \left\{0, f_{j}-d_{j}\right\}$.
- Goal: schedule all jobs to minimize maximum lateness $L=\max _{j} \ell_{j}$.

|  | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $t_{j}$ | 3 | 2 | 1 | 4 | 3 | 2 |
| $d_{j}$ | 6 | 8 | 9 | 9 | 14 | 15 |



Greedy algorithms I: quiz 5

Schedule jobs according to some natural order. Which order minimizes the maximum lateness?
A. [shortest processing time] Ascending order of processing time $t_{j}$.
B. [earliest deadline first] Ascending order of deadline $d_{j}$.
C. [smallest slack] Ascending order of slack: $d_{j}-t_{j}$.
D. None of the above.

## Minimizing lateness: earliest deadline first

EARLIEST-DEADLINE-First $\left(n, t_{1}, t_{2}, \ldots, t_{n}, d_{1}, d_{2}, \ldots, d_{n}\right)$
SORT jobs by due times and renumber so that $d_{1} \leq d_{2} \leq \ldots \leq d_{n}$. $t \leftarrow 0$.

FOR $j=1$ TO $n$
Assign job $j$ to interval $\left[t, t+t_{j}\right]$.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& s_{j} \leftarrow t ; f_{j} \leftarrow t+t_{j} . \\
& t \leftarrow t+t_{j} .
\end{aligned}
$$

Return intervals $\left[s_{1}, f_{1}\right],\left[s_{2}, f_{2}\right], \ldots,\left[s_{n}, f_{n}\right]$.


## Minimizing lateness: no idle time

Observation 1. There exists an optimal schedule with no idle time.


Observation 2. The earliest-deadline-first schedule has no idle time.

## Minimizing lateness: inversions

Def. Given a schedule $S$, an inversion is a pair of jobs $i$ and $j$ such that: $i<j$ but $j$ is scheduled before $i$.


```
recall: we assume the jobs are numbered so that }\mp@subsup{d}{1}{}\leq\mp@subsup{d}{2}{}\leq\ldots\leq\mp@subsup{d}{n}{
```

Observation 3. The earliest-deadline-first schedule is the unique idle-free schedule with no inversions.


## Minimizing lateness: inversions

Def. Given a schedule $S$, an inversion is a pair of jobs $i$ and $j$ such that: $i<j$ but $j$ is scheduled before $i$.


```
recall: we assume the jobs are numbered so that }\mp@subsup{d}{1}{}\leq\mp@subsup{d}{2}{}\leq\ldots\leq\mp@subsup{d}{n}{
```

Observation 4. If an idle-free schedule has an inversion, then it has an adjacent inversion.
Pf. two inverted jobs scheduled consecutively

- Let $i-j$ be a closest inversion.
- Let $k$ be element immediately to the right of $j$.
- Case 1. [ $j>k$ ] Then $j-k$ is an adjacent inversion.
- Case 2. [ $j<k$ ] Then $i-k$ is a closer inversion since $i<j<k$. ※


## Minimizing lateness: inversions

Def. Given a schedule $S$, an inversion is a pair of jobs $i$ and $j$ such that: $i<j$ but $j$ is scheduled before $i$.


Key claim. Exchanging two adjacent, inverted jobs $i$ and $j$ reduces the number of inversions by 1 and does not increase the max lateness. Pf. Let $\ell$ be the lateness before the swap, and let $\ell^{\prime}$ be it afterwards.

- $\ell_{k}^{\prime}=\ell_{k}$ for all $k \neq i, j$.
- $\ell_{i}^{\prime} \leq \ell_{i}$.
- If job $j$ is late, $\ell_{j}^{\prime}=f_{j}^{\prime}-d_{j} \longleftarrow$ definition
$=f_{i}-d_{j} \longleftarrow j$ now finishes at time $f_{i}$
$\leq f_{i}-d_{i} \quad \longleftarrow i<j \Rightarrow d_{i} \leq d_{j}$
$\leq \ell_{i} . \quad \longleftarrow$ definition


## Minimizing lateness: analysis of earliest-deadline-first algorithm

Theorem. The earliest-deadline-first schedule $S$ is optimal.

## Pf. [by contradiction]

optimal schedule can
have inversions

Define $S^{*}$ to be an optimal schedule with the fewest inversions.

- Can assume $S^{*}$ has no idle time.
« Observation 1
- Case 1. [ $S^{*}$ has no inversions] Then $S=S^{*}$. $\longleftarrow$ observation 3
- Case 2. [ $S^{*}$ has an inversion]
- let $i-j$ be an adjacent inversion $\longleftarrow$ Observation 4
- exchanging jobs $i$ and $j$ decreases the number of inversions by 1 without increasing the max lateness $\longleftarrow$ key claim
- contradicts "fewest inversions" part of the definition of $S^{*}$ ※


## Greedy analysis strategies

Greedy algorithm stays ahead. Show that after each step of the greedy algorithm, its solution is at least as good as any other algorithm's.

Structural. Discover a simple "structural" bound asserting that every possible solution must have a certain value. Then show that your algorithm always achieves this bound.

Exchange argument. Gradually transform any solution to the one found by the greedy algorithm without hurting its quality.

Other greedy algorithms. Gale-Shapley, Kruskal, Prim, Dijkstra, Huffman, ...

## GREEDY ALGORITHMS

OPTIMAL CACHING


## 4. Greedy Algorithms I

> coin changing

- interval scheduling
- interval nartitioning
> scheduling to minimize lateness
- optimal caching

Section 4.3

## Optimal offline caching

Caching.

- Cache with capacity to store $k$ items.
- Sequence of $m$ item requests $d_{1}, d_{2}, \ldots, d_{m}$.
- Cache hit: item in cache when requested.
- Cache miss: item not in cache when requested. (must evict some item from cache and bring requested item into cache)

Applications. CPU, RAM, hard drive, web, browser, ....

Goal. Eviction schedule that minimizes the number of evictions.


## Optimal offline caching: greedy algorithms

LIFO/FIFO. Evict item brought in least (most) recently.
LRU. Evict item whose most recent access was earliest.
LFU. Evict item that was least frequently requested.


## Optimal offline caching: farthest-in-future (clairvoyant algorithm)

Farthest-in-future. Evict item in the cache that is not requested until farthest in the future.


Theorem. [Bélády 1966] FF is optimal eviction schedule.
Pf. Algorithm and theorem are intuitive; proof is subtle.

Greedy algorithms I: quiz 6
Which item will be evicted next using farthest-in-future schedule?
A.
cache
B.
C.
D.
E.


## Reduced eviction schedules

Def. A reduced schedule is a schedule that brings an item $d$ into the cache in step $j$ only if there is a request for $d$ in step $j$ and $d$ is not already in the cache.

an unreduced schedule

a reduced schedule

## Reduced eviction schedules

Claim. Given any unreduced schedule $S$, can transform it into a reduced schedule $S^{\prime}$ with no more evictions.
Pf. [ by induction on number of steps $j$ ]

- Suppose $S$ brings $d$ into the cache in step $j$ without a request.
- Let $c$ be the item $S$ evicts when it brings $d$ into the cache.
- Case la: $d$ evicted before next request for $d$.



## Reduced eviction schedules

Claim. Given any unreduced schedule $S$, can transform it into a reduced schedule $S^{\prime}$ with no more evictions.
Pf. [ by induction on number of steps $j$ ]

- Suppose $S$ brings $d$ into the cache in step $j$ without a request.
- Let $c$ be the item $S$ evicts when it brings $d$ into the cache.
- Case la: $d$ evicted before next request for $d$.
- Case lb: next request for $d$ occurs before $d$ is evicted.
unreduced schedule $S$

$\mathbf{S}^{\prime}$



## Reduced eviction schedules

Claim. Given any unreduced schedule $S$, can transform it into a reduced schedule $S^{\prime}$ with no more evictions.
Pf. [ by induction on number of steps $j$ ]

- Suppose $S$ brings $d$ into the cache in step $j$ even though $d$ is in cache.
- Let $c$ be the item $S$ evicts when it brings $d$ into the cache.
- Case 2a: $d$ evicted before it is needed.


| $\mathbf{S}^{\prime}$ |  |  |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
|  | $d_{1}$ | $a$ | $c$ |  |  |
|  | $d_{1}$ | $a$ | $c$ |  |  |
|  | $d_{1}$ | $a$ | $c$ |  | might as well <br> leave $c$ in cache <br> until $d_{3}$ in evicted |
| $d$ | $d_{1}$ | $a$ | $c$ |  |  |
| $d$ | $d_{1}$ | $a$ | $c$ |  |  |
| $c$ | $c$ | $a$ | $c$ |  |  |
| $b$ | $c$ | $a$ | $b$ |  |  |
| $d$ | $c$ | $a$ | $d_{3}$ |  |  |

## Reduced eviction schedules

Claim. Given any unreduced schedule $S$, can transform it into a reduced schedule $S^{\prime}$ with no more evictions.
Pf. [ by induction on number of steps $j$ ]

- Suppose $S$ brings $d$ into the cache in step $j$ even though $d$ is in cache.
- Let $c$ be the item $S$ evicts when it brings $d$ into the cache.
- Case 2a: $d$ evicted before it is needed.
- Case 2b: $d$ needed before it is evicted.



## Reduced eviction schedules

Claim. Given any unreduced schedule $S$, can transform it into a reduced schedule $S^{\prime}$ with no more evictions.
Pf. [ by induction on number of steps $j$ ]

- Case 1: $S$ brings $d$ into the cache in step $j$ without a request.
- Case 2: $S$ brings $d$ into the cache in step $j$ even though $d$ is in cache.
- If multiple unreduced items in step $j$, apply each one in turn, dealing with Case 1 before Case 2. -
resolving Case 1 might trigger Case 2


## Farthest-in-future: analysis

Theorem. FF is optimal eviction algorithm.
Pf. Follows directly from the following invariant.

Invariant. There exists an optimal reduced schedule $S$ that has the same eviction schedule as $S_{F F}$ through the first $j$ steps.
Pf. [ by induction on number of steps $j$ ]
Base case: $j=0$.
Let $S$ be reduced schedule that satisfies invariant through $j$ steps.
We produce $S^{\prime}$ that satisfies invariant after $j+1$ steps.

- Let $d$ denote the item requested in step $j+1$.
- Since $S$ and $S_{F F}$ have agreed up until now, they have the same cache contents before step $j+1$.
- Case 1: $d$ is already in the cache.
$S^{\prime}=S$ satisfies invariant.
- Case 2: $d$ is not in the cache and $S$ and $S_{F F}$ evict the same item. $S^{\prime}=S$ satisfies invariant.


## Farthest-in-future: analysis

## Pf. [continued]

- Case 3: $d$ is not in the cache; $S_{F F}$ evicts $e ; S$ evicts $f \neq e$.
- begin construction of $S^{\prime}$ from $S$ by evicting $e$ instead of $f$

| same |  | $e$ | $f$ | step $\mathbf{j}$ |  | same |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | $\mathbf{S}$ |  |  |  | $e$ | $f$ |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

- now $S^{\prime}$ agrees with $S_{F F}$ for first $j+1$ steps; we show that having item $f$ in cache is no worse than having item $e$ in cache
- let $S^{\prime}$ behave the same as $S$ until $S^{\prime}$ is forced to take a different action (because either $S$ evicts $e$; or because either $e$ or $f$ is requested)


## Farthest-in-future: analysis

Let $j^{\prime}$ be the first step after $j+1$ that $S^{\prime}$ must take a different action from $S$; let $g$ denote the item requested in step $j^{\prime}$.
involves either $e$ or $f$ (or both)

| same | $e$ | step $\mathbf{j}^{\prime}$ | same |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |

## $\mathbf{S} \mathbf{S}^{\prime}$

- Case 3a: $g=e$. $S^{\prime}$ agrees with $S_{F F}$ through first $j+1$ steps

Can't happen with FF since there must be a request for $f$ before $e$.

- Case 3b: $g=f$.

Element $f$ can't be in cache of $S$; let $e^{\prime}$ be the item that $S$ evicts.

- if $e^{\prime}=e, S^{\prime}$ accesses $f$ from cache; now $S$ and $S^{\prime}$ have same cache
- if $e^{\prime} \neq e$, we make $S^{\prime}$ evict $e^{\prime}$ and bring $e$ into the cache; now $S$ and $S^{\prime}$ have the same cache
We let $S^{\prime}$ behavé exactly like $S$ for remaining requests.
$S^{\prime}$ is no longer reduced, but can be transformed into a


## Farthest-in-future: analysis

Let $j^{\prime}$ be the first step after $j+1$ that $S^{\prime}$ must take a different action from $S$; let $g$ denote the item requested in step $j^{\prime}$.

| same | $e$ | step $\mathbf{j}^{\prime}$ | same |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\mathbf{S}$ |  | $\mathbf{S}^{\prime}$ |  |

otherwise $S^{\prime}$ could have taken the same action $\downarrow$

- Case 3c: $g \neq e, f . S$ evicts $e$.
- make $S^{\prime}$ evict $f$.

- now $S$ and $S^{\prime}$ have the same cache
- let $S^{\prime}$ behave exactly like $S$ for the remaining requests •


## Caching perspective

Online vs. offline algorithms.

- Offline: full sequence of requests is known a priori.
- Online (reality): requests are not known in advance.
- Caching is among most fundamental online problems in CS.

LIFO. Evict item brought in most recently.
LRU. Evict item whose most recent access was earliest.


Theorem. FF is optimal offline eviction algorithm.

- Provides basis for understanding and analyzing online algorithms.
- LIFO can be arbitrarily bad.
- LRU is $k$-competitive: for any sequence of requests $\sigma, L R U(\sigma) \leq k F F(\sigma)+k$.
- Randomized marking is $O(\log k)$-competitive.


## GREEDY ALGORITHMS

SHORTEST PATHS - DIJKSTRA'S ALGORITHM


## 4. Greedy Algorithms II

- Dijkstra's algorithm
> minimum spanning trees
- Prim, Kruskal, Boruvka
+ single link clustering
- min-cost arborescences


## Single-pair shortest path problem

Problem. Given a digraph $G=(V, E)$, edge lengths $\ell_{e} \geq 0$, source $s \in V$, and destination $t \in V$, find a shortest directed path from $s$ to $t$.


## Single-source shortest paths problem

Problem. Given a digraph $G=(V, E)$, edge lengths $\ell_{e} \geq 0$, source $s \in V$, find a shortest directed path from $s$ to every node.

Assumption. There exists a path from $s$ to every node.

shortest-paths tree

Shortest paths: quiz 1
Suppose that you change the length of every edge of $G$ as follows. For which is every shortest path in G a shortest path in G'?
A. Add 17.
B. Multiply by 17 .
C. Either A or B.
D. Neither A nor B .

## Shortest paths: quiz 2

## Which variant in car GPS?

A. Single source: from one node $s$ to every other node.
B. Single sink: from every node to one node $t$.
C. Source-sink: from one node $s$ to another node $t$.
D. All pairs: between all pairs of nodes.


## Shortest path applications

- PERT/CPM.
- Map routing.
- Seam carving.
- Robot navigation.
- Texture mapping.
- Typesetting in LaTeX.
- Urban traffic planning.
- Telemarketer operator scheduling.
- Routing of telecommunications messages.
- Network routing protocols (OSPF, BGP, RIP).
- Optimal truck routing through given traffic congestion pattern.



## Dijkstra's algorithm (for single-source shortest paths problem)

Greedy approach. Maintain a set of explored nodes $S$ for which algorithm has determined $d[u]=$ length of a shortest $s \rightarrow u$ path.

- Initialize $S \leftarrow\{s\}, d[s] \leftarrow 0$.
- Repeatedly choose unexplored node $v \notin S$ which minimizes

$$
\pi(v)=\min _{e=(u, v): u \in S} d[u]+\ell_{e} \quad \begin{aligned}
& \text { the length of a shortest path from } s \\
& \text { to some node } u \text { in explored part } S \\
& \text { followed by a single edge } e=(u, v)
\end{aligned}
$$



## Dijkstra's algorithm (for single-source shortest paths problem)

Greedy approach. Maintain a set of explored nodes $S$ for which algorithm has determined $d[u]=$ length of a shortest $s \rightarrow u$ path.

- Initialize $S \leftarrow\{s\}, d[s] \leftarrow 0$.
- Repeatedly choose unexplored node $v \notin S$ which minimizes

$$
\pi(v)=\min _{e=(u, v): u \in S} d[u]+\ell_{e}
$$

add $v$ to $S$, and set $d[v] \leftarrow \pi(v)$.
the length of a shortest path from $s$ to some node $u$ in explored part $S$, followed by a single edge $e=(u, v)$

- To recover path, set $\operatorname{pred}[v] \leftarrow e$ that achieves min.



## Dijkstra's algorithm: proof of correctness

Invariant. For each node $u \in S: d[u]=$ length of a shortest $s \rightarrow u$ path.

## Pf. [ by induction on $|S|$ ]

Base case: $|S|=1$ is easy since $S=\{s\}$ and $d[s]=0$.
Inductive hypothesis: Assume true for $|S| \geq 1$.

- Let $v$ be next node added to $S$, and let $(u, v)$ be the final edge.
- A shortest $s \rightarrow u$ path plus $(u, v)$ is an $s \rightarrow v$ path of length $\pi(v)$.
- Consider any other $s \rightarrow v$ path $P$. We show that it is no shorter than $\pi(v)$.
- Let $e=(x, y)$ be the first edge in $P$ that leaves $S$, and let $P^{\prime}$ be the subpath from $s$ to $x$.
- The length of $P$ is already $\geq \pi(v)$ as soon as it reaches $y$ :



## Dijkstra's algorithm: efficient implementation

Critical optimization 1. For each unexplored node $v \notin S$ : explicitly maintain $\pi[v]$ instead of computing directly from definition

$$
\pi(v)=\min _{e=(u, v): u \in S} d[u]+\ell_{e}
$$

- For each $v \notin S: \pi(v)$ can only decrease (because set $S$ increases).
- More specifically, suppose $u$ is added to $S$ and there is an edge $e=(u, v)$ leaving $u$. Then, it suffices to update:

$$
\begin{aligned}
&\left.\pi[v] \leftarrow \min \left\{\pi[v], \pi[u]+\ell_{e}\right)\right\} \\
& \quad \begin{array}{l}
\text { recall: for each } u \in S, \\
\pi[u]=d[u]=\text { length of shortest } s \rightarrow u \text { path }
\end{array}
\end{aligned}
$$

Critical optimization 2. Use a min-oriented priority queue (PQ)
to choose an unexplored node that minimizes $\pi[v]$.

## Dijkstra's algorithm: efficient implementation

Implementation.

- Algorithm maintains $\pi[v]$ for each node $v$.
- Priority queue stores unexplored nodes, using $\pi[\cdot]$ as priorities.
- Once $u$ is deleted from the PQ, $\pi[u]=$ length of a shortest $s \rightarrow u$ path.

Dijkstra ( $V, E, \ell, s$ )
FOREACH $v \neq s: \pi[v] \leftarrow \infty, \operatorname{pred}[v] \leftarrow$ null; $\pi[s] \leftarrow 0$.
Create an empty priority queue $p q$.
Foreach $v \in V: \operatorname{InSERT}(p q, v, \pi[v])$.
While (IS-Not-Empty $(p q)$ )

$$
u \leftarrow \operatorname{DEL}-\operatorname{Min}(p q) .
$$

FOREACH edge $e=(u, v) \in E$ leaving $u$ :

$$
\operatorname{IF}\left(\pi[v]>\pi[u]+\ell_{e}\right)
$$

$\operatorname{Decrease-Key}\left(p q, v, \pi[u]+\ell_{e}\right)$.
$\pi[v] \leftarrow \pi[u]+\ell_{e} ; \operatorname{pred}[v] \leftarrow e$.

## Dijkstra's algorithm: which priority queue?

Performance. Depends on PQ: $n$ Insert, $n$ Delete-Min, $\leq m$ Decrease-Key.

- Array implementation optimal for dense graphs. $\longleftarrow \Theta\left(n^{2}\right)$ edges
- Binary heap much faster for sparse graphs. $\longleftarrow \Theta(n)$ edges
- 4-way heap worth the trouble in performance-critical situations.

| priority queue | INSERT | DELETE-MIN | DECREASE-KEY | total |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| unordered array | $O(1)$ | $O(n)$ | $O(1)$ | $O\left(n^{2}\right)$ |
| binary heap | $O(\log n)$ | $O(\log n)$ | $O(\log n)$ | $O(m \log n)$ |
| d-way heap <br> (Johnson 1975) | $O\left(d \log _{d} n\right)$ | $O\left(d \log _{d} n\right)$ | $O\left(\log _{d} n\right)$ | $O\left(m \log _{m / n} n\right)$ |
| Fibonacci heap | $O(1)$ | $O(\log n)^{\dagger}$ | $O(1)^{\dagger}$ | $O(m+n \log n)$ |
| (Fredman-Tarjan 1984) | $O(\log \log n)$ | $O(1)$ | $O(m+n \log \log n)$ |  |
| integer priority queue <br> (Thorup 2004) | $O(1)$ | $O$ |  |  |

## Shortest paths: quiz 3

How to solve the the single-source shortest paths problem in undirected graphs with positive edge lengths?
A. Replace each undirected edge with two antiparallel edges of same length. Run Dijkstra's algorithm in the resulting digraph.
B. Modify Dijkstra's algorithms so that when it processes node $u$, it consider all edges incident to $u$ (instead of edges leaving $u$ ).
C. Either A or B.
D. Neither A nor B.

## Shortest paths: quiz 3

## Theorem. [Thorup 1999] Can solve single-source shortest paths problem in undirected graphs with positive integer edge lengths in $O(m)$ time.

Remark. Does not explore nodes in increasing order of distance from $s$.

Undirected Single Source Shortest Paths with Positive Integer Weights in Linear Time

Mikkel Thorup
AT\&T Labs—Research

The single source shortest paths problem (SSSP) is one of the classic problems in algorithmic graph theory: given a pasitively weighted graph $G$ with a source vertex $s$, find the shortest path from $s$ to all other vertices in the graph.

Since 1959 all theoretical developments in SSSP for general directed and undirected graphs have been based on Dijkstra's algorithm, visiting the vertices in order of increasing distance from s. Thus, any implementation of Dijkstra's algorithm sorts the vertices according to their distances from $s$. However, we do not know how to sort in linear time.

Here, a deterministic linear time and linear space algorithm is presented for the undirected single source shortest paths problem with positive integer weights. The algorithm avoids the sorting bottle-neck by building a hierarchical budketing structure, identifying vertex pairs that may be visited in any order.


## Extensions of Dijkstra's algorithm

Dijkstra's algorithm and proof extend to several related problems:

- Shortest paths in undirected graphs: $\pi[v] \leq \pi[u]+\ell(u, v)$.
- Maximum capacity paths: $\pi[v] \geq \min \{\pi[u], c(u, v)\}$.
- Maximum reliability paths: $\pi[v] \geq \pi[u] \times \gamma(u, v)$.
- ...

Key algebraic structure. Closed semiring (min-plus, bottleneck, Viterbi, ...).


$$
\begin{aligned}
a+b & =b+a \\
a+(b+c) & =(a+b)+c \\
a+0 & =a \\
a \cdot(b \cdot c) & =(a \cdot b) \cdot c \\
a \cdot 0 & =0 \cdot a=0 \\
a \cdot 1 & =1 \cdot a=a \\
a \cdot(b+c) & =a \cdot b+a \cdot c \\
(a+b) \cdot c & =a \cdot c+b \cdot c \\
a^{*}=1+a \cdot a^{*} & =1+a^{*} \cdot a
\end{aligned}
$$

## GREEDY ALGORITHMS

MINIMUM SPANNING TREES - PRIM, KRUSKAL AND BORŮVKA


## 4. Greedy Algorithms II

- Dijkstra's algorithm
- minimum spanning trees
- Prim, Kruskal, Boruvka
- single-link clustering
- min-cost arborescences


## Cycles

Def. A path is a sequence of edges which connects a sequence of nodes.

Def. A cycle is a path with no repeated nodes or edges other than the starting and ending nodes.


$$
\begin{aligned}
\text { path } P & =\{(1,2),(2,3),(3,4),(4,5),(5,6)\} \\
\text { cycle } C & =\{(1,2),(2,3),(3,4),(4,5),(5,6),(6,1)\}
\end{aligned}
$$

Def. A cut is a partition of the nodes into two nonempty subsets $S$ and $V-S$.

Def. The cutset of a cut $S$ is the set of edges with exactly one endpoint in $S$.


$$
\begin{gathered}
\text { cut } S=\{4,5,8\} \\
\text { cutset } D=\{(3,4),(3,5),(5,6),(5,7),(8,7)\}
\end{gathered}
$$

Minimum spanning trees: quiz 1
Consider the cut $S=\{1,4,6,7\}$. Which edge is in the cutset of $S$ ?
A. $\quad S$ is not a cut (not connected)
B. 1-7
C. 5-7
D. 2-3


Minimum spanning trees: quiz 2
Let $C$ be a cycle and let $D$ be a cutset. How many edges do $C$ and $D$ have in common? Choose the best answer.
A. 0
B. 2
C. not 1
D. an even number

## Cycle-cut intersection

Proposition. A cycle and a cutset intersect in an even number of edges.


$$
\begin{aligned}
\text { cycle } C & =\{(1,2),(2,3),(3,4),(4,5),(5,6),(6,1)\} \\
\text { cutset } D & =\{(3,4),(3,5),(5,6),(5,7),(8,7)\} \\
\text { intersection } C \cap D & =\{(3,4),(5,6)\}
\end{aligned}
$$

Cycle-cut intersection

Proposition. A cycle and a cutset intersect in an even number of edges. Pf. [by picture]


## Spanning tree definition

Def. Let $H=(V, T)$ be a subgraph of an undirected graph $G=(V, E)$. $H$ is a spanning tree of $G$ if $H$ is both acyclic and connected.

graph $\mathrm{G}=(\mathrm{V}, \mathrm{E})$
spanning tree $H=(V, T)$

Minimum spanning trees: quiz 3

## Which of the following properties are true for all spanning trees H ?

A. Contains exactly $|V|-1$ edges.
B. The removal of any edge disconnects it.
C. The addition of any edge creates a cycle.
D. All of the above.

graph $\mathrm{G}=(\mathrm{V}, \mathrm{E})$
spanning tree $H=(V, T)$

## Spanning tree properties

Proposition. Let $H=(V, T)$ be a subgraph of an undirected graph $G=(V, E)$. Then, the following are equivalent:

- $H$ is a spanning tree of $G$.
- $H$ is acyclic and connected.
- $H$ is connected and has $|V|-1$ edges.
- $H$ is acyclic and has $|V|-1$ edges.
- $H$ is minimally connected: removal of any edge disconnects it.
- $H$ is maximally acyclic: addition of any edge creates a cycle.

graph $G=(V, E)$
spanning tree $H=(V, T)$


## 

## Minimum spanning tree (MST)

Def. Given a connected, undirected graph $G=(V, E)$ with edge costs $c_{e}$, a minimum spanning tree $(V, T)$ is a spanning tree of $G$ such that the sum of the edge costs in $T$ is minimized.


Cayley's theorem. The complete graph on $n$ nodes has $n^{n-2}$ spanning trees.

Minimum spanning trees: quiz 4

Suppose that you change the cost of every edge in G as follows. For which is every MST in G an MST in G' (and vice versa)? Assume c(e) > 0 for each $e$.
A. $\quad c^{\prime}(e)=c(e)+17$.
B. $\quad c^{\prime}(e)=17 \times c(e)$.
C. $\quad c^{\prime}(e)=\log _{17} c(e)$.
D. All of the above.

MST is fundamental problem with diverse applications.

- Dithering.
- Cluster analysis.
- Max bottleneck paths.
- Real-time face verification.
- LDPC codes for error correction.
- Image registration with Renyi entropy.
- Find road networks in satellite and aerial imagery.
- Model locality of particle interactions in turbulent fluid flows.
- Reducing data storage in sequencing amino acids in a protein.
- Autoconfig protocol for Ethernet bridging to avoid cycles in a network.
- Approximation algorithms for NP-hard problems (e.g., TSP, Steiner tree).
- Network design (communication, electrical, hydraulic, computer, road).


Network Flows: Theory, Algorithms, and Applications,
by Ahuja, Magnanti, and Orlin, Prentice Hall, 1993.

## Fundamental cycle

Fundamental cycle. Let $H=(V, T)$ be a spanning tree of $G=(V, E)$.

- For any non tree-edge $e \in E: T \cup\{e\}$ contains a unique cycle, say $C$.
- For any edge $f \in C: T \cup\{e\}-\{f\}$ is a spanning tree.

graph $G=(V, E)$
spanning tree $H=(V, T)$

Observation. If $c_{e}<c_{f}$, then $(V, T)$ is not an MST.

## Fundamental cutset

Fundamental cutset. Let $H=(V, T)$ be a spanning tree of $G=(V, E)$.

- For any tree edge $f \in T: T-\{f\}$ contains two connected components. Let $D$ denote corresponding cutset.
- For any edge $e \in D: T-\{f\} \cup\{e\}$ is a spanning tree.


Observation. If $c_{e}<c_{f}$, then $(V, T)$ is not an MST.

## The greedy algorithm

## Red rule.

- Let $C$ be a cycle with no red edges.
- Select an uncolored edge of $C$ of max cost and color it red.

Blue rule.

- Let $D$ be a cutset with no blue edges.
- Select an uncolored edge in $D$ of min cost and color it blue.


## Greedy algorithm.

- Apply the red and blue rules (nondeterministically!) until all edges are colored. The blue edges form an MST.
- Note: can stop once $n-1$ edges colored blue.


## Greedy algorithm: proof of correctness

Color invariant. There exists an MST ( $V, T^{*}$ ) containing every blue edge and no red edge.
Pf. [ by induction on number of iterations ]

Base case. No edges colored $\Rightarrow$ every MST satisfies invariant.

## Greedy algorithm: proof of correctness

Color invariant. There exists an MST ( $V, T^{*}$ ) containing every blue edge and no red edge.
Pf. [ by induction on number of iterations ]

Induction step (blue rule). Suppose color invariant true before blue rule.

- let $D$ be chosen cutset, and let $f$ be edge colored blue.
- if $f \in T^{*}$, then $T^{*}$ still satisfies invariant.
- Otherwise, consider fundamental cycle $C$ by adding $f$ to $T^{*}$.
- let $e \in C$ be another edge in $D$.
- $e$ is uncolored and $c_{e} \geq c_{f}$ since
- $e \in T^{*} \Rightarrow e$ not red
- blue rule $\Rightarrow e$ not blue and $c_{e} \geq c_{f}$



## Greedy algorithm: proof of correctness

Color invariant. There exists an MST ( $V, T^{*}$ ) containing every blue edge and no red edge.
Pf. [ by induction on number of iterations ]

Induction step (red rule). Suppose color invariant true before red rule.

- let $C$ be chosen cycle, and let $e$ be edge colored red.
- if $e \notin T^{*}$, then $T^{*}$ still satisfies invariant.
- Otherwise, consider fundamental cutset $D$ by deleting $e$ from $T^{*}$.
- let $f \in D$ be another edge in $C$.
- $f$ is uncolored and $c_{e} \geq c_{f}$ since
- $f \notin T^{*} \Rightarrow f$ not blue
- red rule $\Rightarrow f$ not red and $c_{e} \geq c_{f}$
- Thus, $T^{*} \cup\{f\}-\{e\}$ satisfies invariant. -



## Greedy algorithm: proof of correctness

Theorem. The greedy algorithm terminates. Blue edges form an MST.
Pf. We need to show that either the red or blue rule (or both) applies.

- Suppose edge $e$ is left uncolored.
- Blue edges form a forest.
- Case 1: both endpoints of $e$ are in same blue tree.
$\Rightarrow$ apply red rule to cycle formed by adding $e$ to blue forest.


Case 1

## Greedy algorithm: proof of correctness

Theorem. The greedy algorithm terminates. Blue edges form an MST.
Pf. We need to show that either the red or blue rule (or both) applies.

- Suppose edge $e$ is left uncolored.
- Blue edges form a forest.
- Case 1: both endpoints of $e$ are in same blue tree.
$\Rightarrow$ apply red rule to cycle formed by adding $e$ to blue forest.
- Case 2: both endpoints of $e$ are in different blue trees.
$\Rightarrow$ apply blue rule to cutset induced by either of two blue trees. -


Case 2


## 4. Greedy Algorithms II

, Dijkstra's algorithm

- minimum spanning trees
- Prim, Kruskal, Boruvka
> single-link clustering
- min-cost arborescences


## Prim's algorithm

Initialize $S=$ any node, $T=\varnothing$.
Repeat $n-1$ times:

- Add to $T$ a min-cost edge with one endpoint in $S$.
- Add new node to $S$.
by construction, edges in
cutset are uncolored
 Pf. Special case of greedy algorithm (blue rule repeatedly applied to $S$ ). •



## Kruskal's algorithm

Consider edges in ascending order of cost:

- Add to tree unless it would create a cycle.

Theorem. Kruskal's algorithm computes an MST.
Pf. Special case of greedy algorithm.

- Case 1: both endpoints of $e$ in same blue tree.
$\Rightarrow$ color $e$ red by applying red rule to unique cycle.
- Case 2: both endpoints of $e$ in different blue trees.
$\Rightarrow$ color $e$ blue by applying blue rule to cutset defined by either tree.



## Kruskal's algorithm: implementation

Theorem. Kruskal's algorithm can be implemented to run in $O(m \log m)$ time.

- Sort edges by cost.
- Use union-find data structure to dynamically maintain connected components.

```
\(\operatorname{Kruskal}(V, E, c)\)
SORT \(m\) edges by cost and renumber so that \(c\left(e_{1}\right) \leq c\left(e_{2}\right) \leq \ldots \leq c\left(e_{m}\right)\).
\(T \leftarrow \varnothing\).
Foreach \(v \in V\) : \(\operatorname{Make}-\operatorname{Set}(v)\).
FOR \(i=1\) TO \(m\)
\((u, v) \leftarrow e_{i}\).
\(\operatorname{IF}(\operatorname{FIND}-\operatorname{SEt}(u) \neq \operatorname{FIND}-\operatorname{SET}(v)) \longleftarrow \begin{gathered}\text { are } u \text { and } v \text { in } \\ \text { same component? }\end{gathered}\)
        \(T \leftarrow T \cup\left\{e_{i}\right\}\).
        \(\operatorname{Union}(u, v) . \longleftarrow \begin{gathered}\text { make } u \text { and } v \text { in } \\ \text { same component }\end{gathered}\)
REturn \(T\).
```


## Reverse-delete algorithm

Start with all edges in $T$ and consider them in descending order of cost:

- Delete edge from $T$ unless it would disconnect $T$.

Theorem. The reverse-delete algorithm computes an MST.
Pf. Special case of greedy algorithm.

- Case 1. [ deleting edge $e$ does not disconnect $T$ ]
$\Rightarrow$ apply red rule to cycle $C$ formed by adding $e$ to another path in $T$ between its two endpoints
no edge in $C$ is more expensive
(it would have already been considered and deleted)
- Case 2. [ deleting edge $e$ disconnects $T$ ]
$\Rightarrow$ apply blue rule to cutset $D$ induced by either component
$e$ is the only remaining edge in the cutset
(all other edges in $D$ must have been colored red/deleted)

Fact. [Thorup 2000] Can be implemented to run in $O\left(m \log n(\log \log n)^{3}\right)$ time.

## Review: the greedy MST algorithm

## Red rule.

- Let $C$ be a cycle with no red edges.
- Select an uncolored edge of $C$ of max cost and color it red.

Blue rule.

- Let $D$ be a cutset with no blue edges.
- Select an uncolored edge in $D$ of min cost and color it blue.


## Greedy algorithm.

- Apply the red and blue rules (nondeterministically!) until all edges are colored. The blue edges form an MST.
- Note: can stop once $n-1$ edges colored blue.

Theorem. The greedy algorithm is correct.
Special cases. Prim, Kruskal, reverse-delete, ...

## Borůvka's algorithm

Repeat until only one tree.

- Apply blue rule to cutset corresponding to each blue tree.
- Color all selected edges blue.

Theorem. Borůvka's algorithm computes the MST. $\longleftarrow<\begin{gathered}\text { assume edge } \\ \text { costs are distinct }\end{gathered}$ Pf. Special case of greedy algorithm (repeatedly apply blue rule). -


## Borůvka's algorithm: implementation

Theorem. Borůvka's algorithm can be implemented to run in $O(m \log n)$ time. Pf.

- To implement a phase in $O(m)$ time:
- compute connected components of blue edges
- for each edge $(u, v) \in E$, check if $u$ and $v$ are in different components; if so, update each component's best edge in cutset
- $\leq \log _{2} n$ phases since each phase (at least) halves total \# components. -


Function Boruvka( $V, E, c$ )
$1 K \leftarrow \emptyset$
2 count $\leftarrow$ CountAndLabel $(K)$
3 while count $>1$ do
$4 \quad$ for $i=1$ to count do $S[i] \leftarrow$ NIL
$5 \quad$ forall the $(u, v) \in E$ do
if label $(u) \neq \operatorname{label}(v)$ then if $c(u, v)<w(S[\operatorname{label}(u)])$ then $S[\operatorname{label}(u)] \leftarrow(u, v)$
if $c(u, v)<w(S[$ label $(v)])$ then $S[$ label $(v)] \leftarrow(u, v)$
for $i=1$ to count do if $S[i] \neq$ NIL then add $S[i]$ to $K$ count $\leftarrow$ CountAndLabel $(K)$

11 return $K$

## Borůvka's algorithm on planar graphs

Theorem. Borůvka's algorithm (contraction version) can be implemented to run in $O(n)$ time on planar graphs.
Pf.

- Each Borůvka phase takes $O(n)$ time:
- Fact 1: $m \leq 3 n$ for simple planar graphs.
- Fact 2: planar graphs remains planar after edge contractions/deletions.
- Number of nodes (at least) halves in each phase.
- Thus, overall running time $\leq c n+c n / 2+c n / 4+c n / 8+\ldots=O(n)$. -

planar

$K_{3,3}$ not planar


## A hybrid algorithm

Borůvka-Prim algorithm.

- Run Borůvka (contraction version) for $\log _{2} \log _{2} n$ phases.
- Run Prim on resulting, contracted graph.

Theorem. Borůvka-Prim computes an MST.
Pf. Special case of the greedy algorithm.

Theorem. Borůvka-Prim can be implemented to run in $O(m \log \log n)$ time.
Pf.

- The $\log _{2} \log _{2} n$ phases of Borůvka's algorithm take $O(m \log \log n)$ time; resulting graph has $\leq n / \log _{2} n$ nodes and $\leq m$ edges.
- Prim's algorithm (using Fibonacci heaps) takes $O(m+n)$ time on a graph with $n / \log _{2} n$ nodes and $m$ edges. -

$$
\begin{gathered}
\text { o(m+ } \left.\frac{n}{\log n} \log \left(\frac{n}{\log n}\right)\right)
\end{gathered}
$$

## Does a linear-time compare-based MST algorithm exist?


deterministic compare-based MST algorithms

Theorem. [Fredman-Willard 1990] $O(m)$ in word RAM model.
Theorem. [Dixon-Rauch-Tarjan 1992] $O(m)$ MST verification algorithm.
Theorem. [Karger-Klein-Tarjan 1995] $O(m)$ randomized MST algorithm.

## Part IV

## Network Flows

## The Ford-Fulkerson Method

Ford-Fulkerson Algorithm
Capacity-Scaling Algorithm
Shortest Augmenting Path
Dinitz' Algorithm
The Push-Relabel Method
Network Flows - Applications
Bipartite Matching
Disjoint Paths
Multiple Sources and Sinks
Circulations with Supplies and Demands

## THE FORD-FULKERSON METHOD

## THE FORD-FULKERSON METHOD

PROBLEM FORMULATION


Section 7.1

## 7. Network Flow I

- max-flow and min-cut problems
, Ford-Fulkerson algorithm
- max-flow min-cut theorem
- capacih-scaling algorithm
- shortest augmenting paths
- Dinitz' alaorithm
- simple unit-capacity networks


## Flow network

A flow network is a tuple $G=(V, E, s, t, c)$.

- Digraph ( $V, E$ ) with source $s \in V$ and $\operatorname{sink} t \in V$.
- Capacity $c(e)>0$ for each $e \in E$.

Intuition. Material flowing through a transportation network; material originates at source and is sent to sink.


## Minimum-cut problem

Def. An st-cut (cut) is a partition $(A, B)$ of the nodes with $s \in A$ and $t \in B$.

Def. Its capacity is the sum of the capacities of the edges from $A$ to $B$.

$$
\operatorname{cap}(A, B)=\sum_{e \text { out of } A} c(e)
$$

## Minimum-cut problem

Def. An st-cut (cut) is a partition $(A, B)$ of the nodes with $s \in A$ and $t \in B$.

Def. Its capacity is the sum of the capacities of the edges from $A$ to $B$.

$$
\operatorname{cap}(A, B)=\sum_{e \text { out of } A} c(e)
$$



## Minimum-cut problem

Def. An st-cut (cut) is a partition $(A, B)$ of the nodes with $s \in A$ and $t \in B$.

Def. Its capacity is the sum of the capacities of the edges from $A$ to $B$.

$$
\operatorname{cap}(A, B)=\sum_{e \text { out of } A} c(e)
$$

Min-cut problem. Find a cut of minimum capacity.


Network flow: quiz 1

## Which is the capacity of the given st-cut?

A. $11(20+25-8-11-9-6)$
B. $34(8+11+9+6)$
C. $45(20+25)$
D. $79(20+25+8+11+9+6)$


## Maximum-flow problem

Def. An $s t$-flow (flow) $f$ is a function that satisfies:

- For each $e \in E$ :

$$
0 \leq f(e) \leq c(e)
$$

[capacity]

- For each $v \in V-\{s, t\}: \sum_{e \text { in to } v} f(e)=\sum_{e \text { out of } v} f(e)$ [flow conservation]



## Maximum-flow problem

Def. An $s t$-flow (flow) $f$ is a function that satisfies:

- For each $e \in E$ :

$$
0 \leq f(e) \leq c(e)
$$

[capacity]

- For each $v \in V-\{s, t\}: \sum_{e \text { in to } v} f(e)=\sum_{e \text { out of } v} f(e) \quad$ [flow conservation]

Def. The value of a flow $f$ is: $\operatorname{val}(f)=\sum_{e \text { out of } s} f(e)-\sum_{e \text { in to } s} f(e)$


## Maximum-flow problem

Def. An $s t$-flow (flow) $f$ is a function that satisfies:

- For each $e \in E$ :

$$
0 \leq f(e) \leq c(e)
$$

[capacity]

- For each $v \in V-\{s, t\}: \sum_{e \text { in to } v} f(e)=\sum_{e \text { out of } v} f(e) \quad$ [flow conservation]

Def. The value of a flow $f$ is: $\operatorname{val}(f)=\sum_{e \text { out of } s} f(e)-\sum_{e \text { in to } s} f(e)$
Max-flow problem. Find a flow of maximum value.

## THE FORD-FULKERSON METHOD

FORD-FULKERSON ALGORITHM


## 7. Network Flow I

- max-flow and min-cut problems
- Ford-Fulkerson algorithm
> max-flow min-cut theorem
- capacity-scaling algorithm
- shortest augmenting naths
- Dinitz' algorithm
- simple unit-capacity networks

Toward a max-flow algorithm

Greedy algorithm.

- Start with $f(e)=0$ for each edge $e \in E$.
- Find an $s \rightarrow t$ path $P$ where each edge has $f(e)<c(e)$.
- Augment flow along path $P$.
- Repeat until you get stuck.


Toward a max-flow algorithm

Greedy algorithm.

- Start with $f(e)=0$ for each edge $e \in E$.
- Find an $s \rightarrow t$ path $P$ where each edge has $f(e)<c(e)$.
- Augment flow along path $P$.
- Repeat until you get stuck.
flow network G and flow $\mathbf{f}$


Toward a max-flow algorithm

Greedy algorithm.

- Start with $f(e)=0$ for each edge $e \in E$.
- Find an $s \rightarrow t$ path $P$ where each edge has $f(e)<c(e)$.
- Augment flow along path $P$.
- Repeat until you get stuck.
flow network G and flow $\mathbf{f}$


Toward a max-flow algorithm

Greedy algorithm.

- Start with $f(e)=0$ for each edge $e \in E$.
- Find an $s \rightarrow t$ path $P$ where each edge has $f(e)<c(e)$.
- Augment flow along path $P$.
- Repeat until you get stuck.
flow network G and flow $\mathbf{f}$


Toward a max-flow algorithm

Greedy algorithm.

- Start with $f(e)=0$ for each edge $e \in E$.
- Find an $s \rightarrow t$ path $P$ where each edge has $f(e)<c(e)$.
- Augment flow along path $P$.
- Repeat until you get stuck.
flow network $G$ and flow $f$



## Toward a max-flow algorithm

Greedy algorithm.

- Start with $f(e)=0$ for each edge $e \in E$.
- Find an $s \rightarrow t$ path $P$ where each edge has $f(e)<c(e)$.
- Augment flow along path $P$.
- Repeat until you get stuck.

$$
\text { ending flow value = } 16
$$

flow network $G$ and flow $f$


## Toward a max-flow algorithm

Greedy algorithm.

- Start with $f(e)=0$ for each edge $e \in E$.
- Find an $s \rightarrow t$ path $P$ where each edge has $f(e)<c(e)$.
- Augment flow along path $P$.
- Repeat until you get stuck.

$$
\text { but max-flow value = } 19
$$

flow network $G$ and flow $f$


## Why the greedy algorithm fails

Q. Why does the greedy algorithm fail?
A. Once greedy algorithm increases flow on an edge, it never decreases it.

Ex. Consider flow network $G$.

- The unique max flow has $f^{*}(v, w)=0$.
- Greedy algorithm could choose $s \rightarrow v \rightarrow w \rightarrow t$ as first augmenting path.


Bottom line. Need some mechanism to "undo" a bad decision.

## Residual network

Original edge. $e=(u, v) \in E$.

- Flow $f(e)$.
- Capacity $c(e)$.


## original flow network G



Reverse edge. $e^{\text {reverse }}=(v, u)$.

- "Undo" flow sent.
residual network $\mathbf{G}_{\boldsymbol{f}}$


Residual capacity.

$$
c_{f}(e)= \begin{cases}c(e)-f(e) & \text { if } e \in E \\ f(e) & \text { if } e^{\text {reverse }} \in E\end{cases}
$$

edges with positive
residual capacity

Residual network. $G_{f}=\left(V, E_{f}, s, t, c_{f}\right)$.

- $E_{f}=\{e: f(e)<c(e)\} \cup\left\{e^{\text {reverse }}: f(e)>0\right\}$.

- Key property: $f^{\prime}$ is a flow in $G_{f}$ iff $f+f^{\prime}$ is a flow in $G$.


## Augmenting path

Def. An augmenting path is a simple $s \rightarrow t$ path in the residual network $G_{f}$.
Def. The bottleneck capacity of an augmenting path $P$ is the minimum residual capacity of any edge in $P$.

Key property. Let $f$ be a flow and let $P$ be an augmenting path in $G_{f}$. Then, after calling $f^{\prime} \leftarrow \operatorname{AuGMENT}(f, c, P)$, the resulting $f^{\prime}$ is a flow and $\operatorname{val}\left(f^{\prime}\right)=\operatorname{val}(f)+\operatorname{bottleneck}\left(G_{f}, P\right)$.
$\operatorname{AuGMEnT}(f, c, P)$
$\delta \leftarrow$ bottleneck capacity of augmenting path $P$.
Foreach edge $e \in P$ :
$\operatorname{IF}(e \in E) f(e) \leftarrow f(e)+\delta$.
ELSE $\quad f\left(e^{\text {reverse }}\right) \leftarrow f\left(e^{\text {reverse }}\right)-\delta$.
RETURN $f$.

Network flow: quiz 2

Which is the augmenting path of highest bottleneck capacity?
A. $A \rightarrow F \rightarrow G \rightarrow H$
B. $A \rightarrow B \rightarrow C \rightarrow D \rightarrow H$
C. $A \rightarrow F \rightarrow B \rightarrow G \rightarrow H$
D. $A \rightarrow F \rightarrow B \rightarrow G \rightarrow C \rightarrow D \rightarrow H$


## Ford-Fulkerson algorithm

Ford-Fulkerson augmenting path algorithm.

- Start with $f(e)=0$ for each edge $e \in E$.
- Find an $s \rightarrow t$ path $P$ in the residual network $G_{f}$.
- Augment flow along path $P$.
- Repeat until you get stuck.

Ford-Fulkerson( $G$ )
Foreach edge $e \in E: f(e) \leftarrow 0$.
$G_{f} \leftarrow$ residual network of $G$ with respect to flow $f$.
While (there exists an $\mathrm{s} \rightarrow \mathrm{t}$ path $P$ in $G_{f}$ )
$f \leftarrow \operatorname{AUGMENT}(f, c, P)$.
Update $G_{f}$.
augmenting path
RETURN $f$.


## 7. Network Flow I

- Ford-Fulkerson demo
- exponential-time example
- pathological example


## Ford-Fulkerson algorithm demo

network $G$ and flow $f$

value of flow 0
residual network $\mathbf{G}_{\mathrm{f}}$


## Ford-Fulkerson algorithm demo

network $G$ and flow $f$

residual network $\mathbf{G}_{\mathrm{f}}$


## Ford-Fulkerson algorithm demo

network $G$ and flow $f$

residual network $\mathbf{G}_{\mathrm{f}}$


## Ford-Fulkerson algorithm demo

network $G$ and flow $f$

residual network $\mathbf{G}_{\mathrm{f}}$


## Ford-Fulkerson algorithm demo

network $G$ and flow $f$

fixes mistake from
second augmenting path
residual network $\mathbf{G}_{f}$


## Ford-Fulkerson algorithm demo

network $G$ and flow $f$

residual network $G_{f}$


## THE FORD-FULKERSON METHOD

MAX-FLOW MIN-CUT THEOREM


Section 7.2

## 7. Network Flow I

> max-flow and min-cut problems
, Ford-Fulkerson algorithm

- max-flow min-cut theorem
> capacity-scaling algorithm
- shortest augmenting paths
- Dinitz' algorithm
- simple unit-capacity networks


## Relationship between flows and cuts

Flow value lemma. Let $f$ be any flow and let $(A, B)$ be any cut. Then, the value of the flow $f$ equals the net flow across the cut $(A, B)$.

$$
\operatorname{val}(f)=\sum_{e \text { out of } A} f(e)-\sum_{e \text { in to } A} f(e)
$$

$$
\text { net flow across cut }=5+10+10=25
$$



## Relationship between flows and cuts

Flow value lemma. Let $f$ be any flow and let $(A, B)$ be any cut. Then, the value of the flow $f$ equals the net flow across the cut $(A, B)$.

$$
\operatorname{val}(f)=\sum_{e \text { out of } A} f(e)-\sum_{e \text { in to } A} f(e)
$$

$$
\text { net flow across cut }=10+5+10=25
$$



## Relationship between flows and cuts

Flow value lemma. Let $f$ be any flow and let $(A, B)$ be any cut. Then, the value of the flow $f$ equals the net flow across the cut $(A, B)$.

$$
\operatorname{val}(f)=\sum_{e \text { out of } A} f(e)-\sum_{e \text { in to } A} f(e)
$$

$$
\text { net flow across cut }=(10+10+5+10+0+0)-(5+5+0+0)=25
$$



Network flow: quiz 3

## Which is the net flow across the given cut?

A. $11(20+25-8-11-9-6)$
B. $26(20+22-8-4-4)$
C. $42(20+22)$
D. $45(20+25)$


## Relationship between flows and cuts

Flow value lemma. Let $f$ be any flow and let $(A, B)$ be any cut. Then, the value of the flow $f$ equals the net flow across the cut $(A, B)$.

$$
\operatorname{val}(f)=\sum_{e \text { out of } A} f(e)-\sum_{e \text { in to } A} f(e)
$$

Pf.

$$
\operatorname{val}(f)=\sum_{e \text { out of } s} f(e)-\sum_{e \text { in to } s} f(e)
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
\begin{array}{c}
\text { by flow conservation, all terms } \\
\text { except for } v=\mathrm{s} \text { are } 0
\end{array} & \longrightarrow
\end{aligned} \sum_{v \in A}\left(\sum_{e \text { out of } v} f(e)-\sum_{e \text { in to } v} f(e)\right)
$$

## Relationship between flows and cuts

Weak duality. Let $f$ be any flow and $(A, B)$ be any cut. Then, $\operatorname{val}(f) \leq \operatorname{cap}(A, B)$. Pf.

$$
\operatorname{val}(f)=\sum_{e \text { out of } A} f(e)-\sum_{e \text { in to } A} f(e)
$$



value of flow $=27$

## Certificate of optimality

Corollary. Let $f$ be a flow and let $(A, B)$ be any cut.
If $\operatorname{val}(f)=\operatorname{cap}(A, B)$, then $f$ is a max flow and $(A, B)$ is a min cut.

Pf.

- For any flow $f^{\prime}: \operatorname{val}\left(f^{\prime}\right) \leq \operatorname{cap}(A, B)=\operatorname{val}(f)$.
- For any cut $\left(A^{\prime}, B^{\prime}\right): \operatorname{cap}\left(A^{\prime}, B^{\prime}\right) \geq \operatorname{val}(f)=\operatorname{cap}(A, B)$.
weak duality

value of flow $=28$

$$
=
$$


$=\quad$ capacity of cut $=28$

## Max-flow min-cut theorem

## Max-flow min-cut theorem. Value of a max flow = capacity of a min cut. <br> strong duality

## MAXIMAL FLOW THROUGH A NETWORK

> L. R. FORD, Jr. and D. R. FULKERSON

Introduction. The problem discussed in this paper was formulated by T. Harris as follows:
"Consider a rail network connecting two cities by way of a number of intermediate cities, where each link of the network has a number assigned to it representing its capacity. Assuming a steady state condition, find a maximal flow from one given city to the other."

## ON THE MAX HLOW MIN CUT THEOREM OF NETWORKS

G. B. Dantzig
D. R. Fulkerson

2-826

April 15, 1955

A Note on the Maximum Flow Through a Network*<br>P. ELIAS $\dagger$, A. FEINSTEIN $\ddagger$, AND C. E. ShanNON§

Summary-This note discusses the problem of maximizing the from one terminal to the other in the original network rate of flow from one terminal to another, through a natwork which consists of a number of branches, each of which has a limited capacity. The main result is a theorem: The maximum possible flow from ieft to right through a notwork is equal to the minimum value among all simple cut-sets. This theorem is applied to solve a more general
problem, in which a number of input nodes and a number of output nodes are used. passes through at least one branch in the cut-set. In the network above, some examples of cut-sets are ( $d, e, f$ ), and ( $b, c, e, g, h$ ), $(d, g, h, i)$. By a simple cut-set we will mean a cut-set such that if any branch is omitted it is no longer a cut-set. Thus ( $d, e, f$ ) and ( $(b, c, e, g, h)$ are simple tato while $(d$ o $h \rightarrow$ in when

## Max-flow min-cut theorem

Max-flow min-cut theorem. Value of a max flow = capacity of a min cut. Augmenting path theorem. A flow $f$ is a max flow iff no augmenting paths.

Pf. The following three conditions are equivalent for any flow $f$ :
i. There exists a cut $(A, B)$ such that $\operatorname{cap}(A, B)=\operatorname{val}(f)$.
ii. $f$ is a max flow.
iii. There is no augmenting path with respect to $f$. $\longleftarrow \begin{gathered}\text { if Ford-Fulkerson terminates, } \\ \text { then } f \text { is max flow }\end{gathered}$
[ $\mathrm{i} \Rightarrow \mathrm{ii}$ ]

- This is the weak duality corollary.


## Max-flow min-cut theorem

Max-flow min-cut theorem. Value of a max flow = capacity of a min cut. Augmenting path theorem. A flow $f$ is a max flow iff no augmenting paths.

Pf. The following three conditions are equivalent for any flow $f$ :
i. There exists a cut $(A, B)$ such that $\operatorname{cap}(A, B)=\operatorname{val}(f)$.
ii. $f$ is a max flow.
iii. There is no augmenting path with respect to $f$.
[ ii $\Rightarrow$ iii ] We prove contrapositive: $\neg \mathrm{iii} \Rightarrow \neg \mathrm{ii}$.

- Suppose that there is an augmenting path with respect to $f$.
- Can improve flow $f$ by sending flow along this path.
- Thus, $f$ is not a max flow. -


## Max-flow min-cut theorem

[ iii $\Rightarrow$ i ]

- Let $f$ be a flow with no augmenting paths.
- Let $A$ be set of nodes reachable from $s$ in residual network $G_{f}$.
- By definition of $A: s \in A$.
- By definition of flow $f: t \notin A$.



## THE FORD-FULKERSON METHOD

CAPACITY-SCALING ALGORITHM


Section 7.3

## 7. Network Flow I

> max-flow and min-cut problems
-Ford-Fulkerson algorithm

- max-flow min-cut theoram
- capacity-scaling algorithm
> shortest augmenting paths
- Dinitz' algorithm
- simple unit-canccith networks


## Analysis of Ford-Fulkerson algorithm (when capacities are integral)

Assumption. Every edge capacity $c(e)$ is an integer between 1 and $C$.

Integrality invariant. Throughout Ford-Fulkerson, every edge flow $f(e)$ and residual capacity $c_{f}(e)$ is an integer.
Pf. By induction on the number of augmenting paths. - consider cut $A=\{s\}$
Theorem. Ford-Fulkerson terminates after at most val(f*) $\leq n C$ augmenting paths, where $f^{*}$ is a max flow.
Pf. Each augmentation increases the value of the flow by at least 1. -

Corollary. The running time of Ford-Fulkerson is $O(m n C)$.
Pf. Can use either BFS or DFS to find an augmenting path in $O(m)$ time.
$f(e)$ is an integer for every $e$
Integrality theorem. There exists an integral max flow $f^{*}$.
Pf. Since Ford-Fulkerson terminates, theorem follows from integrality invariant (and augmenting path theorem).

## Ford-Fulkerson: exponential example

Q. Is generic Ford-Fulkerson algorithm poly-time in input size?
$m, n$, and $\log C$
A. No. If max capacity is $C$, then algorithm can take $\geq C$ iterations.

- $s \rightarrow v \rightarrow w \rightarrow t$
- $s \rightarrow w \rightarrow v \rightarrow t$

- $s \rightarrow v \rightarrow w \rightarrow t$
- $s \rightarrow w \rightarrow v \rightarrow t$
- ...
- $s \rightarrow v \rightarrow w \rightarrow t$
- $s \rightarrow w \rightarrow v \rightarrow t$
$\longleftarrow \quad \begin{gathered}\text { sends only } 1 \text { unit of flow } \\ \text { (\# augmenting paths }=2 C \text { ) }\end{gathered}$


Network flow: quiz 4
The Ford-Fulkerson algorithm is guaranteed to terminate if the edge capacities are ...
A. Rational numbers.
B. Real numbers.
C. Both A and B.
D. Neither A nor B.

## Choosing good augmenting paths

Use care when selecting augmenting paths.

- Some choices lead to exponential algorithms.
- Clever choices lead to polynomial algorithms.

Pathology. When edge capacities can be irrational, no guarantee that Ford-Fulkerson terminates (or converges to a maximum flow)!

Goal. Choose augmenting paths so that:

- Can find augmenting paths efficiently.
- Few iterations.


## Choosing good augmenting paths

Choose augmenting paths with:

- Max bottleneck capacity ("fattest"). $\longleftarrow$ how to find?
- Sufficiently large bottleneck capacity. next
- Fewest edges.ahead


## Theoretical Improvements in Algorithmic Efficiency for Network Flow Problems

## JACK EDMONDS

Uatersity of Waterloo, Waterloo, Ontario, Canada
AND
RICHARD M. KARP
Cniversily of California, Berkeley, California
anstuct. This paper presents new algorithms for the maximum flow problem, the Hiteheoth transportation problem, and the general minimum-cost flow problem. Upper bounds on the numbers of steps in these algorithms are derived, and are shown to compate favorably with upper bounds on the numbers of ateps required by earlier algorithms.

Dokl. Akad. Nauk SSSR
Tom 194 (1970), No. 4

Soviet Math. Dokl Vol. 11 (1970), No. 5

ALGORITHM FOR SOLUTION OF A PROBLEM OF MAXIMUM FLOW IN A NETWORK WITH UDC 518.5 POWER ESTIMATION
E. A. DINIC

Different variants of the formulation of the problem of maximal stationary flow in a network and its many applications are given in [1]. There also is given an algorithm solving the problem in the case where the initial data are integers (or, what is equivalent, commensurable). In the general case this algorithm requires preliminary rounding off of the initial data, i.e. only an approximate solution of the problem is possible. In this connection the rapidity of convergence of the algorithm is inversely proportional to the relative precision.

Dinitz 1970 (Soviet Union)

## Capacity-scaling algorithm

Overview. Choosing augmenting paths with "large" bottleneck capacity.

- Maintain scaling parameter $\Delta$.
- Let $G_{f}(\Delta)$ be the part of the residual network containing only those edges with capacity $\geq \Delta$.
- Any augmenting path in $G_{f}(\Delta)$ has bottleneck capacity $\geq \Delta$.

$G_{f}$

$\mathrm{G}_{\mathrm{f}}(\Delta), \Delta=100$


## Capacity-scaling algorithm

CAPACITY-SCALING( $G$ )

FOREACH edge $e \in E: f(e) \leftarrow 0$.
$\Delta \leftarrow$ largest power of $2 \leq C$.

WhiLE $(\Delta \geq 1)$
$G_{f}(\Delta) \leftarrow \Delta$-residual network of $G$ with respect to flow $f$. While (there exists an $s \rightarrow t$ path $P$ in $G_{f}(\Delta)$ )

$$
f \leftarrow \operatorname{AUGMENT}(f, c, P)
$$

Update $G_{f}(\Delta)$.
$\Delta$-scaling phase
$\Delta \leftarrow \Delta / 2$.

RETURN $f$.

## Capacity-scaling algorithm: proof of correctness

Assumption. All edge capacities are integers between 1 and $C$.

Invariant. The scaling parameter $\Delta$ is a power of 2.
Pf. Initially a power of 2 ; each phase divides $\Delta$ by exactly 2 . •

Integrality invariant. Throughout the algorithm, every edge flow $f(e)$ and residual capacity $c_{f}(e)$ is an integer.
Pf. Same as for generic Ford-Fulkerson. -

Theorem. If capacity-scaling algorithm terminates, then $f$ is a max flow. Pf.

- By integrality invariant, when $\Delta=1 \Rightarrow G_{f}(\Delta)=G_{f}$.
- Upon termination of $\Delta=1$ phase, there are no augmenting paths.
- Result follows augmenting path theorem -


## Capacity-scaling algorithm: analysis of running time

Lemma 1. There are $1+\left\lfloor\log _{2} C\right\rfloor$ scaling phases.
Pf. Initially $C / 2<\Delta \leq C ; \Delta$ decreases by a factor of 2 in each iteration. -

Lemma 2. Let $f$ be the flow at the end of a $\Delta$-scaling phase.
Then, the max-flow value $\leq \operatorname{val}(f)+m \Delta$.
Pf. Next slide.

Lemma 3. There are $\leq 2 m$ augmentations per scaling phase.
Pf.

- Let $f$ be the flow at the beginning of a $\Delta$-scaling phase.
- Lemma $2 \Rightarrow$ max-flow value $\leq \operatorname{val}(f)+m(2 \Delta)$.
- Each augmentation in a $\Delta$-phase increases $\operatorname{val}(f)$ by at least $\Delta$. -

Theorem. The capacity-scaling algorithm takes $O\left(m^{2} \log C\right)$ time.
Pf.

- Lemma 1 + Lemma $3 \Rightarrow O(m \log C)$ augmentations.
- Finding an augmenting path takes $O(m)$ time. -


## Capacity-scaling algorithm: analysis of running time

Lemma 2. Let $f$ be the flow at the end of a $\Delta$-scaling phase.
Then, the max-flow value $\leq \operatorname{val}(f)+m \Delta$.
Pf.

- We show there exists a cut $(A, B)$ such that $\operatorname{cap}(A, B) \leq \operatorname{val}(f)+m \Delta$.
- Choose $A$ to be the set of nodes reachable from $s$ in $G_{f}(\Delta)$.
- By definition of $A: s \in A$.
- By definition of flow $f: t \notin A$.
$\operatorname{val}(f)=\sum_{e \text { out of } A} f(e)-\sum_{e \text { in to } A} f(e)$

$$
\begin{aligned}
\substack{\text { flow value } \\
\text { lemma }} & \geq \sum_{e \text { out of } A}(c(e)-\Delta)-\sum_{e \text { in to } A} \Delta \\
& \geq \sum_{e \text { out of } A} c(e)-\sum_{e \text { out of } A} \Delta-\sum_{e \text { in to } A} \Delta \\
& \geq \operatorname{cap}(A, B)-m \Delta
\end{aligned}
$$

edge $e=(v, w)$ with $v \in B, w \in A$

edge $e=(v, w)$ with $v \in A, w \in B$
must have $f(e)>c(e)-\Delta$

## THE FORD-FULKERSON METHOD

SHORTEST AUGMENTING PATH

## 7. Network Flow I

```
THE DESIGN AND
ANALYSIS OF
ALGORITHMS
```

Dexter C. Kozen
> max-flow and min-cut problems
-Ford-Fulkerson algorithm

- max-flow min-cut thcoram
p capacity-scaling algorithm
- shortest augmenting paths
- Dinitz' algorithm
- simple unit-capacity networks


## Shortest augmenting path

Q. How to choose next augmenting path in Ford-Fulkerson?
A. Pick one that uses the fewest edges.
can find via BFS

```
Shortest-Augmenting-Path \((G)\)
FOREACH \(e \in E: f(e) \leftarrow 0\).
    \(G_{f} \leftarrow\) residual network of \(G\) with respect to flow \(f\).
    While (there exists an \(s \rightarrow t\) path in \(G_{f}\) )
    \(P \leftarrow \operatorname{BREADTH}-\operatorname{FiRST}-\operatorname{SEARCH}\left(G_{f}\right)\).
    \(f \leftarrow \operatorname{Augment}(f, c, P)\).
    Update \(G_{f}\).
RETURN \(f\).
```


## Shortest augmenting path: overview of analysis

Lemma 1. The length of a shortest augmenting path never decreases. Pf. Ahead.
number of edges
Lemma 2. After at most $m$ shortest-path augmentations, the length of a shortest augmenting path strictly increases.
Pf. Ahead.

Theorem. The shortest-augmenting-path algorithm takes $O\left(m^{2} n\right)$ time.
Pf.

- $O(m)$ time to find a shortest augmenting path via BFS.
- There are $\leq m n$ augmentations.
- at most $m$ augmenting paths of length $k \longleftarrow$ Lemma $1+$ Lemma 2
- at most $n-1$ different lengths -
augmenting paths are simple paths


## Shortest augmenting path: analysis

Def. Given a digraph $G=(V, E)$ with source $s$, its level graph is defined by:

- $\ell(v)=$ number of edges in shortest $s \rightarrow v$ path.
- $L_{G}=\left(V, E_{G}\right)$ is the subgraph of $G$ that contains only those edges $(v, w) \in E$ with $\ell(w)=\ell(v)+1$.


Network flow: quiz 5

## Which edges are in the level graph of the following digraph?

A. $D \rightarrow F$.
B. $E \rightarrow F$.
C. Both A and B.
D. Neither A nor B.


## Shortest augmenting path: analysis

Def. Given a digraph $G=(V, E)$ with source $s$, its level graph is defined by:

- $\ell(v)=$ number of edges in shortest $s \rightarrow v$ path.
- $L_{G}=\left(V, E_{G}\right)$ is the subgraph of $G$ that contains only those edges $(v, w) \in E$ with $\ell(w)=\ell(v)+1$.

Key property. $P$ is a shortest $s \rightarrow v$ path in $G$ iff $P$ is an $s \rightarrow v$ path in $L_{G}$.


## Shortest augmenting path: analysis

Lemma 1. The length of a shortest augmenting path never decreases.

- Let $f$ and $f^{\prime}$ be flow before and after a shortest-path augmentation.
- Let $L_{G}$ and $L_{G^{\prime}}$ be level graphs of $G_{f}$ and $G_{f^{\prime}}$.
- Only back edges added to $G_{f}$ ' (any $s \rightarrow t$ path that uses a back edge is longer than previous length) •

level graph LG'


## Shortest augmenting path: analysis

Lemma 2. After at most $m$ shortest-path augmentations, the length of a shortest augmenting path strictly increases.

- At least one (bottleneck) edge is deleted from $L_{G}$ per augmentation.
- No new edge added to $L_{G}$ until shortest path length strictly increases. -



## Shortest augmenting path: review of analysis

Lemma 1. Throughout the algorithm, the length of a shortest augmenting path never decreases.

Lemma 2. After at most $m$ shortest-path augmentations, the length of a shortest augmenting path strictly increases.

Theorem. The shortest-augmenting-path algorithm takes $O\left(m^{2} n\right)$ time.

## Shortest augmenting path: improving the running time

Note. $\Theta(m n)$ augmentations necessary for some flow networks.

- Try to decrease time per augmentation instead.
- Simple idea $\quad \Rightarrow O\left(m n^{2}\right) \quad[D i n i t z ~ 1970] \longleftarrow$ ahead
- Dynamic trees $\Rightarrow O(m n \log n)$ [Sleator-Tarjan 1983]

A Data Structure for Dynamic Trees
Daniel D. Sleator and Robert Endre Tarjan
Bell Laboratories, Murray Hill, New Jersey 07974
Received May 8, 1982; revised Uctober 18, 1982

A data structure is proposed to maintain a collection of vertex-disjoint trees under a sequence of two kinds of operations: a link operation that combines two trees into one by adding an edge, and a cut operation that divides one tree into two by deleting an edge. Each operation requires $O(\log n)$ time. Using this data structure, new fast algorithms are obtained for the following problems:
(1) Computing nearest common ancestors.
(2) Solving various network flow problems including finding maximum flows, blocking flows, and acyclic flows.
(3) Computing certain kinds of constrained minimum spanning trees.
(4) Implementing the network simplex algorithm for minimum-cost flows.

The most significant application is (2); an $O(m n \log n)$-time algorithm is obtained to find a maximum flow in a network of $n$ vertices and $m$ edges, beating by a factor of $\log n$ the fastest algorithm previously known for sparse graphs.

## THE FORD-FULKERSON METHOD

DINITZ' ALGORITHM

## 7. Network Flow I

## THE DESIGN AND ANALYSIS OF ALGORITHMS

Dexter C. Kozen
> max-flow and min-cut problems
-Ford-Fulkerson algorithm

- max-flow min-cut theoram
> capacity-scaling algorithm
> shortest augmenting paths
- Dinitz' algorithm
- simple unit-capacity networks


## Dinitz' algorithm

Two types of augmentations.

- Normal: length of shortest path does not change.
- Special: length of shortest path strictly increases.

Phase of normal augmentations. $\qquad$ within a phase, length of shortest augmenting path does not change

- Construct level graph $L_{G}$.
- Start at $s$, advance along an edge in $L_{G}$ until reach $t$ or get stuck.
- If reach $t$, augment flow; update $L_{G}$; and restart from $s$.
- If get stuck, delete node from $L_{G}$ and retreat to previous node.



## Dinitz' algorithm

Two types of augmentations.

- Normal: length of shortest path does not change.
- Special: length of shortest path strictly increases.

Phase of normal augmentations.

- Construct level graph $L_{G}$.
- Start at $s$, advance along an edge in $L_{G}$ until reach $t$ or get stuck.
- If reach $t$, augment flow; update $L_{G}$; and restart from $s$.
- If get stuck, delete node from $L_{G}$ and retreat to previous node.
advance



## Dinitz' algorithm

Two types of augmentations.

- Normal: length of shortest path does not change.
- Special: length of shortest path strictly increases.

Phase of normal augmentations.

- Construct level graph $L_{G}$.
- Start at $s$, advance along an edge in $L_{G}$ until reach $t$ or get stuck.
- If reach $t$, augment flow; update $L_{G}$; and restart from $s$.
- If get stuck, delete node from $L_{G}$ and retreat to previous node.
augment



## Dinitz' algorithm

Two types of augmentations.

- Normal: length of shortest path does not change.
- Special: length of shortest path strictly increases.

Phase of normal augmentations.

- Construct level graph $L_{G}$.
- Start at $s$, advance along an edge in $L_{G}$ until reach $t$ or get stuck.
- If reach $t$, augment flow; update $L_{G}$; and restart from $s$.
- If get stuck, delete node from $L_{G}$ and retreat to previous node.
advance



## Dinitz' algorithm

Two types of augmentations.

- Normal: length of shortest path does not change.
- Special: length of shortest path strictly increases.

Phase of normal augmentations.

- Construct level graph $L_{G}$.
- Start at $s$, advance along an edge in $L_{G}$ until reach $t$ or get stuck.
- If reach $t$, augment flow; update $L_{G}$; and restart from $s$.
- If get stuck, delete node from $L_{G}$ and retreat to previous node.
retreat



## Dinitz' algorithm

Two types of augmentations.

- Normal: length of shortest path does not change.
- Special: length of shortest path strictly increases.

Phase of normal augmentations.

- Construct level graph $L_{G}$.
- Start at $s$, advance along an edge in $L_{G}$ until reach $t$ or get stuck.
- If reach $t$, augment flow; update $L_{G}$; and restart from $s$.
- If get stuck, delete node from $L_{G}$ and retreat to previous node.
advance



## Dinitz' algorithm

Two types of augmentations.

- Normal: length of shortest path does not change.
- Special: length of shortest path strictly increases.

Phase of normal augmentations.

- Construct level graph $L_{G}$.
- Start at $s$, advance along an edge in $L_{G}$ until reach $t$ or get stuck.
- If reach $t$, augment flow; update $L_{G}$; and restart from $s$.
- If get stuck, delete node from $L_{G}$ and retreat to previous node.
augment



## Dinitz' algorithm

Two types of augmentations.

- Normal: length of shortest path does not change.
- Special: length of shortest path strictly increases.

Phase of normal augmentations.

- Construct level graph $L_{G}$.
- Start at $s$, advance along an edge in $L_{G}$ until reach $t$ or get stuck.
- If reach $t$, augment flow; update $L_{G}$; and restart from $s$.
- If get stuck, delete node from $L_{G}$ and retreat to previous node.
advance



## Dinitz' algorithm

Two types of augmentations.

- Normal: length of shortest path does not change.
- Special: length of shortest path strictly increases.

Phase of normal augmentations.

- Construct level graph $L_{G}$.
- Start at $s$, advance along an edge in $L_{G}$ until reach $t$ or get stuck.
- If reach $t$, augment flow; update $L_{G}$; and restart from $s$.
- If get stuck, delete node from $L_{G}$ and retreat to previous node.



## Dinitz' algorithm

Two types of augmentations.

- Normal: length of shortest path does not change.
- Special: length of shortest path strictly increases.

Phase of normal augmentations.

- Construct level graph $L_{G}$.
- Start at $s$, advance along an edge in $L_{G}$ until reach $t$ or get stuck.
- If reach $t$, augment flow; update $L_{G}$; and restart from $s$.
- If get stuck, delete node from $L_{G}$ and retreat to previous node.
retreat



## Dinitz' algorithm

Two types of augmentations.

- Normal: length of shortest path does not change.
- Special: length of shortest path strictly increases.

Phase of normal augmentations.

- Construct level graph $L_{G}$.
- Start at $s$, advance along an edge in $L_{G}$ until reach $t$ or get stuck.
- If reach $t$, augment flow; update $L_{G}$; and restart from $s$.
- If get stuck, delete node from $L_{G}$ and retreat to previous node.
end of phase



## Dinitz' algorithm (as refined by Even and Itai)

Initialize $(G, f)$
$L_{G} \leftarrow$ level-graph of $G_{f}$.
$P \leftarrow \varnothing$.
Goto Advance $(s)$.

Retreat(v)
IF $(v=s)$
STOP.
ElSE
Delete $v$ (and all incident edges) from $L_{G}$.
Remove last edge $(u, v)$ from $P$.
Goto AdVance( $u$ ).

ADVANCE( $v$ )
IF $(v=t)$
Augment $(P)$.
Remove saturated edges from $L_{G}$. $P \leftarrow \varnothing$.

Goto Advance( $s$ ).

IF (there exists edge $(v, w) \in L_{G}$ )
Add edge ( $v, w$ ) to $P$.
Goto Advance(w).

Else
Goto Retreat(v).

Network flow: quiz 6
How to compute the level graph $L_{G}$ efficiently?
A. Depth-first search.
B. Breadth-first search.
C. Both A and B.
D. Neither A nor B.


## Dinitz' algorithm: analysis

Lemma. A phase can be implemented to run in $O(m n)$ time.
Pf.

- Initialization happens once per phase.
$\longleftarrow O(m)$ using BFS
- At most $m$ augmentations per phase. $\longleftarrow O(m n)$ per phase (because an augmentation deletes at least one edge from $L_{G}$ )
- At most $n$ retreats per phase.
$\longleftarrow O(m+n)$ per phase (because a retreat deletes one node from $L_{G}$ )
- At most mn advances per phase. (because at most $n$ advances before retreat or augmentation)

Theorem. [Dinitz 1970] Dinitz' algorithm runs in $O\left(m n^{2}\right)$ time. Pf.

- By Lemma, $O(m n)$ time per phase.
- At most $n-1$ phases (as in shortest-augmenting-path analysis).


## THE FORD-FULKERSON METHOD

SUMMARY

## Augmenting-path algorithms: summary

\(\left.\begin{array}{|c|c|c|c|}\hline year \& method \& \# augmentations \& running time <br>
\hline 1955 \& augmenting path \& n C \& O(m n C) <br>
\hline 1972 \& fattest path \& m \log (m C) \& O\left(m^{2} \log n \log (m C)\right) <br>
\hline 1972 \& capacity scaling \& m \log C \& O\left(m^{2} \log C\right) <br>
\hline 1985 \& improved capacity scaling \& m \log C \& O(m n \log C) <br>
\hline 1970 \& shortest augmenting path \& m n \& O\left(m^{2} n\right) <br>

\hline 1970 \& level graph \& m n \& O\left(m n^{2}\right)\end{array}\right]\)| fat paths |
| :--- |
| 1983 |

augmenting-path algorithms with $m$ edges, $n$ nodes, and integer capacities between 1 and $C$

## Maximum-flow algorithms: theory highlights

| year | method | worst case | discovered by |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1951 | simplex | $O\left(m n^{2} C\right)$ | Dantzig |
| 1955 | augmenting paths | $O(m n C)$ | Ford-Fulkerson |
| 1970 | shortest augmenting paths | $O\left(m n^{2}\right)$ | Edmonds-Karp, Dinitz |
| 1974 | blocking flows | $O\left(n^{3}\right)$ | Karzanov |
| 1983 | dynamic trees | $O(m n \log n)$ | Sleator-Tarjan |
| 1985 | improved capacity scaling | $O(m n \log C)$ | Gabow |
| 1988 | push-relabel | $O\left(m n \log \left(n^{2} / m\right)\right)$ | Goldberg-Tarjan |
| 1998 | binary blocking flows | $O\left(m^{3 / 2} \log \left(n^{2} / m\right) \log C\right)$ | Goldberg-Rao |
| 2013 | compact networks | $O(m n)$ | Orlin |
| 2014 | interior-point methods | $\tilde{O}\left(m m^{1 / 2} \log C\right)$ | Lee-Sidford |
| 2016 | electrical flows | $\tilde{O}\left(m^{10 / 7} C^{1 / 7}\right)$ | Mądry |
| 20xx |  | ??? |  |

## THE PUSH-RELABEL METHOD



## kapitola 26.4.

## Ford-Fulkerson method vs Goldberg method

 aka augmenting path method vs push relabel method- global vs local character
- update flow along an augmenting path vs update flow on edges
- flow conservation vs preflow
pre-flow is a function $f$ with
capacity condition for $e \in E: \quad 0 \leq f(e) \leq c(e)$
relaxed flow conservation for $v \in V \backslash\{s, t\}$ :

$$
\sum_{e \text { into } v} f(e) \geq \sum_{e \text { out of } v} f(e)
$$

## overflowing vertex

vertex $v \in V \backslash\{s, t\}$ with $\sum_{e \text { into } v} f(e)>\sum_{e \text { out of } v} f(e)$
excess flow into vertex $v$
the quantity $e_{f}(v)=\sum_{e \text { into } v} f(e)-\sum_{e \text { out of } v} f(e)$
a pre-flow becomes a flow if no intermediate node has an excess
height function is a function $h: V \rightarrow \mathbb{N}_{0}$
height function $h$ is compatible with preflow $f$ iff
source $h(s)=|V|=n$
sink $h(t)=0$
height difference $h(v) \leq h(w)+1$ for every edge ( $v, w)$ of the residual network $G_{f}$
if $h(v)>h(w)+1$ then $(v, w)$ is not an edge in the residual network $G_{f}$

## Lema

## If $f$ is a preflow and $h$ is an height function compatible with $f$ then

## there is no path from the source $s$ to the sink $t$ in the residual network

$G_{f}$.

- assume that $G_{f}$ contains a path $p=\left\langle v_{0}, v_{1}, \ldots, v_{k}\right\rangle$ with $v_{0}=s$ and $v_{k}=t$
- w.l.o.g. $p$ is simple and thus $k<n$
- because $h$ is a height function $h\left(v_{i}\right) \leq h\left(v_{i+1}\right)+1$ for $i=0,1, \ldots, k-1$
- combining inequalities over $p$ yields $h(s) \leq h(t)+k$
- because $h(t)=0$, we have $h(s) \leq k<n$, which contradits the requirement $h(s)=n$


## Lema

If $f$ is a preflow and $h$ is an height function compatible with $f$ then there is no path from the source $s$ to the sink $t$ in the residual network $G_{f}$.

- assume that $G_{f}$ contains a path $p=\left\langle v_{0}, v_{1}, \ldots, v_{k}\right\rangle$ with $v_{0}=s$ and $v_{k}=t$
- w.l.o.g. $p$ is simple and thus $k<n$
- because $h$ is a height function $h\left(v_{i}\right) \leq h\left(v_{i+1}\right)+1$ for $i=0,1, \ldots, k-1$
- combining inequalities over $p$ yields $h(s) \leq h(t)+k$
- because $h(t)=0$, we have $h(s) \leq k<n$, which contradits the requirement $h(s)=n$


## Lema

If $f$ is a flow and $h$ is an height function compatible with $f$ then $f$ is a maximal flow.

## initialization — height function

- $h(v)=0$ for alle $v \in V, v \neq s$
- $h(s)=n$


## initialization — preflow

- $f(s, v)=c(s, v)$ for each $(s, v) \in E$
- $f(u, v)=0$ for all other edges
initial preflow and height function are compatible

Algorithm: Generic-Push-Relabel
Input: flow network $G=(V, E, s, t, c)$
Output: maximal flow $f$
1 Initialize-PreFlow
2 while true do
3 if no node is overflowing then return $f$
select an overflowing vertex $v$
if $v$ has a neigbor $w$ in $G_{f}$ such that $h(v)>h(w)$ then
$\operatorname{Push}(f, h, v, w)$
else
$\operatorname{Relabel}(f, h, v)$

## Algorithm: Initialize-PreFlow

1 for $v \in V$ do $h(v) \leftarrow 0 ; \quad e_{f}(v) \leftarrow 0$
$2 h(s) \leftarrow n$
3 for $e \in E$ do $f(e) \leftarrow 0$
4 for $(s, v) \in E$ do
$5 \quad f(s, v) \leftarrow c(s, v) ; \quad e_{f}(v) \leftarrow c(s, v) ; \quad e_{f}(s) \leftarrow e_{f}(s)-c(s, v)$

Push applies when $v$ si overflowing, $c_{f}(v, w)>0$, and $h(w)<h(v)$

Function $\operatorname{Push}(f, h, v, w)$
$1 \Delta_{f}(v, w) \leftarrow \min \left(e_{f}(v), c_{f}(v, w)\right)$
2 if $(v, w) \in E$ then
$3\left\lfloor f(v, w) \leftarrow f(v, w)+\Delta_{f}(v, w)\right.$
4 else
$5 \quad f(w, v) \leftarrow f(w, v)-\Delta_{f}(v, w)$
$6 e_{f}(v) \leftarrow e_{f}(v)-\Delta_{f}(v, w)$
$7 e_{f}(w) \leftarrow e_{f}(w)+\Delta_{f}(v, w)$
8 return $f, h$
we can change (i.e. increase or decrease) flow from $v$ to $w$ by $\Delta_{f}(v, w)$ without causing $e_{f}(v)$ to become negative or the capacity $c(v, w)$ to be exceeded

Relabel applies when $v$ si overflowing and for all $w \in V$ such that $(v, w) \in E_{f}$ we have $h(v) \leq h(w)$

Function Relabel( $f, h, v$ )
$1 h(v) \leftarrow 1+\min \left\{h(w) \mid(v, w) \in E_{f}\right\}$ return $h$
when $v$ is relabeled, $E_{f}$ must contain at least one edge that leaves $v$, so that the minimization in the code is over a nonempty set

## A demo of push-relabel algo: initialization



A demo of push-relabel algo: Step 1


Initial pre-flow f and residual graph G_f

A demo of push-relabel algo: Step 2


## A demo of push-relabel algo: Step 3



A demo of push-relabel algo: Step 4


## A demo of push-relabel algo: Step 5



## A demo of push-relabel algo: Step 6



## correctness

## loop invariant

1. $f$ is a preflow
2. the height function $h$ is compatible with $f$

- Initialize-PreFlow makes $f$ a preflow and $h$ compatible with $f$
- Push complies with capacities of edges and if a new edge appears in the residual network, then this edge fulfills the height difference
- Relabel operation affects only height attributes and preserves compatibility
at termination, each inner vertex must have an excess $0, f$ is flow and is
a maximum flow


## complexity - bound on Relabel operations

- the initial height of all vertices (except the source $s$ ) is 0
- everyRelabel operation increases the height by 1
- we need a bound on the maximal height path from $v$ to $s$ in the residual network $G_{f}$.
- let $B=\left\{v \mid\right.$ there is no path from $v$ to $s$ in $\left.G_{f}\right\}$
- let us sum up the excesses of all vertices in $B$,

$$
\sum_{v \in B} e_{f}(v)=\sum_{v \in B}\left(\sum_{e \text { into } v} f(e)-\sum_{e \text { out of } v} f(e)\right) \geq 0
$$

- edge $(x, y)$ with $x, y \in B$ contributes to the sum $\sum_{v \in B} e_{f}(v)$ with zero value
- for edge $(x, y)$ with $x \notin B$ and $y \in B$, the flow $f((x, y))$ is zero (otherwise there would be a path from $y$ to $s$ in $G_{f}$ )
- edge $(x, y)$ with $x \in B, y \notin B$ contributes to the sum $\sum_{v \in B} e_{f}(v)$ with the value $-f((x, y))$
- $\sum_{v \in B} e_{f}(v)=-\sum_{e \text { out of } B} f(e) \geq 0$
- flows are nonegative and thus $\sum_{e \text { out of } B} f(e)=0$ and all vertices in $B$ have zero excess

At any time during the execution of Generic-Push-Relabel we have $h(v) \leq 2 n-1$ for all $v \in V$.

- initially, $h(s)=n$ and $h(t)=0$ and these values never change
- when $v$ is relabeled, it is overflowing and there is a simple path $p$ from $v$ to $s$ if $G_{f}$
- there are at most $n-1$ edges on $p$, every edge fulfills the height difference condition (i.e. every edge decreases the height at most by 1)
- $h(v)-h(s) \leq n-1$, i.e. $h(v) \leq 2 n-1$

During the execution of Generic-Push-Relabel, the number of relabel operations is at most $2 n-1$ per vertex and at most $(2 n-1)(n-2)<2 n^{2}$ overall.

## complexity - bound on Push operations

- there are two types of Push operations
- the operation $\operatorname{Push}(f, h, v, w)$ is saturating push iff edge $(v, w)$ in the residual network becomes saturate, i.e. $c_{f}(v, w)=0$ afterward
- otherwise the operation is nonsaturating push


## The number of saturating pushes is at most 2 nm .

- for any pair of vertices $v, w \in V$, we will count the saturating pushes from $v$ to $w$
- if there is such a push, $(v, w)$ is an edge of the residual network and $h(v)=h(w)+1$
- in order for another push from $v$ to $w$ to occur later, $h(w)$ must increase at leat by 2
- heights start at 0 and never exceed $2 n-1$; the number of times any vertex can have its height increased by 2 is less than $n$
- for a network graph with $m$ edges there can be up to $2 m$ edges in the residual network, which gives the upper bound 2 nm on the number of saturating pushes
- let us define a potential function as $\Phi=\sum_{v \cdot e_{f}(v)>0} h(v)$
- initially, $\Phi=0$
- nonsaturating push decreases $\Phi$ by at least 1
- relabeling a vertex $v$ increases $\Phi$ by less $2 n$, since the set over which the sum is taken is the same and the relabeling cannot increases $v$ 's height by more than its maximum possible height $2 n-1$
- saturating push from $v$ to $w$ increases $\Phi$ by less than $2 n$, since no heights change and only vertex $w$, whose height is at most $2 n-1$, can possibly become overflowing
- the total amount of increase in $\Phi$ is less than
$2 n \cdot 2 n^{2}+2 n \cdot 2 n m=4 n^{2}(n+m)$
- since $\Phi \geq 0$, the total amount of decrease, and therefore the total number of nonsaturating pushes, is less than $4 n^{2}(n+m)$


## During the execution of Generic-Push-Relabel on any flow

 network $G=(V, E, c, s, t)$, the number of basic operations is $\mathcal{O}\left(V^{2} E\right)$.- the push-relabel method allows to apply the basic operations in any order at all
- by choosing the order carefully and managing the network data structure efficiently, we can solve the maximum flow proglem faster than the $\mathcal{O}\left(V^{2} E\right)$ bound
- there is an implementation whose running time is $\mathcal{O}\left(V^{3}\right)$ which is asymptotically at least as good as $\mathcal{O}\left(V^{2} E\right)$, and even better for dense networks

NETWORK FLOWS APPLICATIONS

## NETWORK FLOWS APPLICATIONS

## BIPARTITE MATCHING



Section 7.5

## 7. Network Flow II

- bipartite matching
, disjoint paths
- extensions to max flow
- sumey design
- airline scheduling
- image seamentation
- project selection
- baseball elimination


## Matching

Def. Given an undirected graph $G=(V, E)$, subset of edges $M \subseteq E$ is a matching if each node appears in at most one edge in $M$.

Max matching. Given a graph $G$, find a max-cardinality matching.


## Bipartite matching

Def. A graph $G$ is bipartite if the nodes can be partitioned into two subsets $L$ and $R$ such that every edge connects a node in $L$ with a node in $R$.

Bipartite matching. Given a bipartite graph $G=(L \cup R, E)$, find a maxcardinality matching.


R
matching: 1-1', 2-2', 3-4', 4-5'

## Bipartite matching: max-flow formulation

Formulation.

- Create digraph $G^{\prime}=\left(L \cup R \cup\{s, t\}, E^{\prime}\right)$.
- Direct all edges from $L$ to $R$, and assign infinite (or unit) capacity.
- Add unit-capacity edges from $s$ to each node in $L$.
- Add unit-capacity edges from each node in $R$ to $t$.


Max-flow formulation: proof of correctness
Theorem. 1-1 correspondence between matchings of cardinality $k$ in $G$ and integral flows of value $k$ in $G^{\prime}$.
Pf. $\Rightarrow \quad$ for each edge $e: f(e) \in\{0,1\}$

- Let $M$ be a matching in $G$ of cardinality $k$.
- Consider flow $f$ that sends 1 unit on each of the $k$ corresponding paths.
- $f$ is a flow of value $k$. -


Max-flow formulation: proof of correctness
Theorem. 1-1 correspondence between matchings of cardinality $k$ in $G$ and integral flows of value $k$ in $G^{\prime}$.
Pf. $\Leftarrow \quad$ for each edge e: $f(e) \in\{0,1\}$

- Let $f$ be an integral flow in $G^{\prime}$ of value $k$.
- Consider $M=$ set of edges from $L$ to $R$ with $f(e)=1$.
- each node in $L$ and $R$ participates in at most one edge in $M$
- $|M|=k$ : apply flow-value lemma to cut $(L \cup\{s\}, R \cup\{t\})$ -


Max-flow formulation: proof of correctness
Theorem. 1-1 correspondence between matchings of cardinality $k$ in $G$ and integral flows of value $k$ in $G^{\prime}$.

Corollary. Can solve bipartite matching problem via max-flow formulation. Pf.

- Integrality theorem $\Rightarrow$ there exists a max flow $f^{*}$ in $G^{\prime}$ that is integral.
- 1-1 correspondence $\Rightarrow f^{*}$ corresponds to max-cardinality matching. -



## Network flow II: quiz 1

What is running time of Ford-Fulkerson algorithms to find a maxcardinality matching in a bipartite graph with $|L|=|R|=n$ ?
A. $O(m+n)$
B. $O(m n)$
C. $O\left(m n^{2}\right)$
D. $O\left(m^{2} n\right)$

## NETWORK FLOWS APPLICATIONS

## DISJOINT PATHS



Section 7.6

## 7. Network Flow II

- bipartite matching
- disjoint paths
, extensions to max flow
- survey design
* airline scheduling
- image segmentation
p projeci selection
- baseball elimination


## Edge-disjoint paths

Def. Two paths are edge-disjoint if they have no edge in common.

Edge-disjoint paths problem. Given a digraph $G=(V, E)$ and two nodes $s$ and $t$, find the max number of edge-disjoint $s \rightarrow t$ paths.

Ex. Communication networks.


## Edge-disjoint paths

Def. Two paths are edge-disjoint if they have no edge in common.

Edge-disjoint paths problem. Given a digraph $G=(V, E)$ and two nodes $s$ and $t$, find the max number of edge-disjoint $s \rightarrow t$ paths.

Ex. Communication networks.


## Edge-disjoint paths

Max-flow formulation. Assign unit capacity to every edge.

Theorem. 1-1 correspondence between $k$ edge-disjoint $s \rightarrow t$ paths in $G$ and integral flows of value $k$ in $G^{\prime}$.
Pf. $\Rightarrow$

- Let $P_{1}, \ldots, P_{k}$ be $k$ edge-disjoint $s \rightarrow t$ paths in $G$.
- Set $f(e)= \begin{cases}1 & \text { edge } e \text { participates in some path } P_{j} \\ 0 & \text { otherwise }\end{cases}$
- Since paths are edge-disjoint, $f$ is a flow of value $k$. -



## Edge-disjoint paths

Max-flow formulation. Assign unit capacity to every edge.

Theorem. 1-1 correspondence between $k$ edge-disjoint $s \rightarrow t$ paths in $G$ and integral flows of value $k$ in $G^{\prime}$.
Pf. $\Leftarrow$

- Let $f$ be an integral flow in $G^{\prime}$ of value $k$.
- Consider edge $(s, u)$ with $f(s, u)=1$.
- by flow conservation, there exists an edge $(u, v)$ with $f(u, v)=1$
- continue until reach $t$, always choosing a new edge
- Produces $k$ (not necessarily simple) edge-disjoint paths. -



## Edge-disjoint paths

Max-flow formulation. Assign unit capacity to every edge.

Theorem. 1-1 correspondence between $k$ edge-disjoint $s \rightarrow t$ paths in $G$ and integral flows of value $k$ in $G^{\prime}$.

Corollary. Can solve edge-disjoint paths problem via max-flow formulation. Pf.

- Integrality theorem $\Rightarrow$ there exists a max flow $f^{*}$ in $G^{\prime}$ that is integral.
- 1-1 correspondence $\Rightarrow f^{*}$ corresponds to max number of edge-disjoint $s \rightarrow t$ paths in $G$. -



## NETWORK FLOWS APPLICATIONS

MULTIPLE SOURCES AND SINKS

Network flow II: quiz 4

## Which extensions to max flow can be easily modeled?

A. Multiple sources and multiple sinks.
B. Undirected graphs.
C. Lower bounds on edge flows.
D. All of the above.

## Multiple sources and sinks

Def. Given a digraph $G=(V, E)$ with edge capacities $c(e) \geq 0$ and multiple source nodes and multiple sink nodes, find max flow that can be sent from the source nodes to the sink nodes.
flow network G


Multiple sources and sinks: max-flow formulation

- Add a new source node $s$ and sink node $t$.
- For each original source node $s_{i}$ add edge $\left(s, s_{i}\right)$ with capacity $\infty$.
- For each original sink node $t_{j}$, add edge $\left(t_{j}, t\right)$ with capacity $\infty$.

Claim. 1-1 correspondence betweens flows in $G$ and $G^{\prime}$.


## NETWORK FLOWS APPLICATIONS

CIRCULATIONS WITH SUPPLIES AND DEMANDS

## Circulation with supplies and demands

Def. Given a digraph $G=(V, E)$ with edge capacities $c(e) \geq 0$ and node demands $d(v)$, a circulation is a function $f(e)$ that satisfies:

- For each $e \in E: 0 \leq f(e) \leq c(e)$
- For each $v \in V: \sum_{e \text { in to } v} f(e)-\sum_{e \text { out of } v} f(e)=d(v)$



## Circulation with supplies and demands: max-flow formulation

- Add new source $s$ and sink $t$.
- For each $v$ with $d(v)<0$, add edge $(s, v)$ with capacity $-d(v)$.
- For each $v$ with $d(v)>0$, add edge $(v, t)$ with capacity $d(v)$.

Claim. $G$ has circulation iff $G^{\prime}$ has max flow of value $D=\sum_{v: d(v)>0} d(v)=\sum_{v: d(v)<0}-d(v)$


## Circulation with supplies and demands

Integrality theorem. If all capacities and demands are integers, and there exists a circulation, then there exists one that is integer-valued.

Pf. Follows from max-flow formulation + integrality theorem for max flow.

Theorem. Given $(V, E, c, d)$, there does not exist a circulation iff there exists a node partition $(A, B)$ such that $\Sigma_{v \in B} d(v)>\operatorname{cap}(A, B)$.

Pf sketch. Look at min cut in $G^{\prime}$.
demand by nodes in $B$ exceeds
supply of nodes in $B$ plus
max capacity of edges going from $A$ to $B$

## Circulation with supplies, demands, and lower bounds

Def. Given a digraph $G=(V, E)$ with edge capacities $c(e) \geq 0$, lower bounds $\ell(e) \geq 0$, and node demands $d(v)$, a circulation $f(e)$ is a function that satisfies:

- For each $e \in E: \quad \ell(e) \leq f(e) \leq c(e) \quad$ (capacity)
- For each $v \in V: \sum_{e \text { in to } v} f(e)-\sum_{e \text { out of } v} f(e)=d(v)$ (flow conservation)

Circulation problem with lower bounds. Given ( $V, E, \ell, c, d$ ), does there exist a feasible circulation?

## Circulation with supplies, demands, and lower bounds

Max-flow formulation. Model lower bounds as circulation with demands.

- Send $\ell(e)$ units of flow along edge $e$.
- Update demands of both endpoints.

flow network G


Theorem. There exists a circulation in $G$ iff there exists a circulation in $G^{\prime}$. Moreover, if all demands, capacities, and lower bounds in $G$ are integers, then there exists a circulation in $G$ that is integer-valued.

Pf sketch. $f(e)$ is a circulation in $G$ iff $f^{\prime}(e)=f(e)-\ell(e)$ is a circulation in $G^{\prime}$.

## STRING MATCHING

## STRING MATCHING

- exact string matching
- edit distance
- local and global alignment
- approximate matching
- indexing


## EXACT STRING MATCHING

- strings over a finite alphabet $\Sigma$
- given two strings, a text $T[1 . . n]$ and a pattern $P[1 . . m]$, find the first substring (all substrings) of the text that is the same as the pattern
more formally
- for any shift $s$, let $T_{s}$ denote the substring $T[s . . s+m-1]$
- find the smallest shift (all shifts) $s$ such that $T_{s}=P$ (or report that there is none)


## ALGORITHMS

| algorithm | preprocessing | searching |
| :--- | :---: | :---: |
| brute force | 0 | $\mathcal{O}((n-m+1) m)$ |
| Karp Rabin | $\Theta(m)$ | $\mathcal{O}((n-m+1) m)$ |
| finite automata | $\mathcal{O}(m\|\Sigma\|)$ | $\Theta(n)$ |
| Knuth Morris Pratt | $\Theta(m)$ | $\Theta(n)$ |
| Boyer Moore | $\Theta(m+\|\Sigma\|)$ | $\mathcal{O}((n-m+1) m)$ |

average complexity of algorithms Karp Rabin and Boyer Moore is much better than the given worst case complexity

## BRUTE FORCE ALGORITHM

Algorithm: AlmostBruteForce( $T$ [1..n], $P$ [1..m])
$\mathbf{1}$ for $s \leftarrow 1$ to $n-m+1$ do
$2 \quad$ equal $\leftarrow$ True
$i \leftarrow 1$
while equal and $i \leq m$ do
if $T[s+i-1] \neq P[i]$ then equal $\leftarrow$ False
else

$$
i \leftarrow i+1
$$

if equal then print $s$

## time complexity of the Brute Force Algorithm

- $m-n+1$ possible shifts
- greatest number of character comparisons possible: $n(m-n+1)$ $P$ : aaaa, $T$ : $a^{n}$
- least number of character comparisons possible: $m-n+1$ $P: a b, T: b^{n}$
- breaking out of the inner loop at the first mismatch makes this algorithm quite practical ....... assuming that $P$ and $T$ are both random (the total expected number of comparisons is $\mathcal{O}(n)$ )


## STRING MATCHING

## STRINGS AS NUMBERS

## STRINGS AS NUMBERS

- let $\Sigma=\{0,1, \ldots, 9\}$ (can be any other)
- let $p$ be the numerical value of $P$, and for any shift $s$, let $t_{s}$ be the numerical value of $T_{s}$
- $p=\sum_{i=1}^{m} 10^{m-i} P[i], \quad t_{s}=\sum_{i=1}^{m} 10^{m-i} T[s+i-1]$
- find shift(s) $s$ such that $p=t_{s}$
- we can compute $p$ in $\mathcal{O}(n)$ arithmetic operations, without explicitly compute powers of ten, using Horner's scheme
$p=P[m]+10(P[m-1]+10(P[m-2]+\cdots+10(P[2]+10 \cdot P[1]) \ldots))$
- we can compute $t_{s+1}$ in constant time (to make this we need to precompute the constant $10^{m-1}$ )

$$
t_{s+1}=10\left(t_{s}-10^{m-1} \cdot T[s]\right)+T[s+m]
$$

Algorithm: NumberSearch(T[1..n], $P[1 . . m])$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathbf{1} \quad S \leftarrow 10^{m-1} \\
& \mathbf{2} \quad p \leftarrow 0 \\
& \mathbf{3} t_{1} \leftarrow 0 \\
& \mathbf{4} \text { for } i \leftarrow 1 \text { to } m \text { do } \\
& \mathbf{5} \left\lvert\, \begin{array}{l}
p \leftarrow 10 \cdot p+P[i] \\
\mathbf{6} \\
t_{1} \leftarrow 10 \cdot t_{1}+T[i]
\end{array}\right. \\
& \mathbf{7} \text { for } s \leftarrow 1 \text { to } n-m+1 \text { do } \\
& \mathbf{8} \left\lvert\, \begin{array}{ll}
\text { if } \tilde{p}=\tilde{t}_{s} \text { then print } s \\
\mathbf{9} & t_{s+1} \leftarrow 10 \cdot\left(t_{s}-S \cdot T[s]\right)+T[s+m]
\end{array}\right.
\end{aligned}
$$

complexity: the number of arithmetic operations, acting on numbers with up to $m$ digits, is $\mathcal{O}(n)$

## KARP-RABIN FINGERPRINTING

## Perform all arithmetic modulo some prime number $q$.

- choose $q$ so that the value $10 q$ fits into a standard integer variable
- values $(p \bmod q)$ and $\left(t_{s} \bmod q\right)$ are called the fingerprints
- we can compute $(p \bmod q)$ and $\left(t_{1} \bmod q\right)$ in $\mathcal{O}(m)$ time $p \bmod q=$ $P[m]+10(P[m-1]+\cdots+10 \cdot P[1] \bmod q) \ldots) \bmod q$
- similarly $t_{s+1} \bmod q$
- if $(p \bmod q) \neq\left(t_{s} \bmod q\right)$, then certainly $P \neq T_{s}$
- if $(p \bmod q)=\left(t_{s} \bmod q\right)$, we can't tell whether $P=T_{s}$ or not; we simply do a brute force comparison
- the overall running time is $\mathcal{O}(n+F m)$, where $F$ is the number of false matches
- the expected number of false matches is $\mathcal{O}(n / m)$

Algorithm: $\operatorname{KarpRabin}(T[1 . . n], P[1 . . m])$
$1 q \leftarrow$ a random number between 2 and $\left\lceil m^{2} \log m\right\rceil$
$2 S \leftarrow 10^{m-1}$
$3 \widetilde{p} \leftarrow 0$
$4 \widetilde{t_{1}} \leftarrow 0$
$\mathbf{5}$ for $i \leftarrow 1$ to $m$ do
$6 \quad \widetilde{p} \leftarrow(10 \cdot \widetilde{p} \bmod q)+P[i] \bmod q$
$7 \quad \tilde{t_{1}} \leftarrow\left(10 \cdot \tilde{t_{1}} \bmod q\right)+T[i] \bmod q$
8 for $s \leftarrow 1$ to $n-m+1$ do
9 if $\widetilde{p}=\widetilde{t_{s}}$ then

$$
\begin{aligned}
& L \text { if } P=T_{s} \text { then print } s \\
& \widetilde{t_{s+1}} \leftarrow\left(10 \cdot\left(\widetilde{t_{s}}-(S \cdot T[s] \bmod q)\right)+T[s+m] \bmod q\right.
\end{aligned}
$$

## STRING MATCHING

FINITE STATE MACHINES AND KNUTH-MORRIS-PRATT ALGORITHM

## FINITE STATE MACHINES

- for a given pattern $P$ [1..m] construct a finite automaton

$$
A=(\{0, \ldots, m\}, \Sigma, \delta,\{0\},\{m\})
$$

- the transition function $\delta$ for a state $q$ and symbol $x \in \Sigma$ is the length of the longest prefix of $P[1 . . m]$ that is also a suffix of $P[1 . . q] x$


## $\overline{\text { Function } \operatorname{DELTA}(P, \Sigma)}$

1 for $q \leftarrow 0$ to $m$ do
$2 \quad$ for $x \in \Sigma$ do
$k \leftarrow \min (m+1, q+2)$
repeat $k \leftarrow k-1$ until $P[1 \cdots k]$ is a suffix of $P[1 \cdots q] x$ $\delta(q, x) \leftarrow k$

6 return $\delta$
complexity of the preprocessing is in $\Theta\left(m^{3}|\Sigma|\right)$

Algorithm: Finite Automaton Matcher $(T, A)$
$1 q \leftarrow 0$
2 for $i \leftarrow 1$ to $n$ do
$3 \quad q \leftarrow \delta(q, T[i])$
if $q=m$ then print $i-m$
complexity of string matching is in $\Theta(n)$
can we avoid the expensive preprocessing?

## REDUNDANT COMPARISONS

- character-by-character comparison
- once we have found a match for a text character, we never need to do another comparison with that text character again
- the next reasonable shift is the smallest value of $s$ such that $T[s \ldots i-1]$, which is a suffix of the previously-read text, is also a proper prefix of the pattern
- KMP algorithm implements of both of these ideas through a special type of finite-state machines


## KNUTH-MORRIS-PRATT ALGORITHM (KMP)

- every state in the string-matching machine is labeled with a character from the pattern, except two special states labeled $S$ and $F$
- each state has two outging edges, a success edge and a failure edge
- the success edges define a path through the characters of the pattern in order, starting at S and ending at F
- failure edges always point to earlier characters in the pattern
we use the finite state machine to search for the pattern as follows
- at all times, we have a current text character $T[i]$ and a current state of the machine, which is usually labeled by some pattern character $P[j)$
- if $T[i]=P[j]$, or the current label is S , follow the success edge to the next state and increment $i$
- if $T[i] \neq P[j]$, follow the failure edge back to an earlier state, but do not change $i$


## KMP - implementation

in a real implementation we need only the failure function encoded in an array fail[1..m]
Algorithm: KnuthMorrisPratt(T[1..n], $P[1 . . m])$
1 ComputeFailure( $P[1 . . m]$ )
$2 j \leftarrow 1$
3 for $i \leftarrow 1$ to $n$ do
4 while $j>0$ and $T[i] \neq P[j]$ do
$5 \quad \quad\lfloor\leqslant$ fail $[j]$
if $j=m$ then
print $i-m+1$
$j \leftarrow$ fail $[j]$
$j \leftarrow j+1$

## KMP - complexity

- assume that a correct failure function is already known
- at each character comparison, either we increase $i$ and $j$ by one, or we decrease $j$ and leave $i$ alone
- we can increment $i$ at most $n-1$ times before we run out of the text, so there are at most $n-1$ succesfull comparisons
- there can be at most $n-1$ failed comparisons, sice the number of times we decrease $j$ cannot exceed the number of times we increment $j$
- in other words we can amortize character mismatches against earlier character matches
- the total number of character comparisons performed by KMP in the worst case is $\mathcal{O}(n)$


## KMP - computing the failure function

$P[1 .$. fail $[j]-1]$ is
the longest proper prefix of $P[1 . . j-1]$ that is also a suffix of $T[1 . . i-1]$

- if we are comparing $T[i]$ against $P[j]$, then we must have already matched the first $j-1$ characters of the pattern
- we already know that $P[1 . . j-1]$ is a suffix of $T[1 . . i-1]$, therefore:
$P[1$..fail $[j]-1]$ is
the longest proper prefix of $P[1 . . j-1]$ that is also a suffix of $P[1 . . j-1]$
Algorithm: ComputeFailure( $P[1 . . m]$ )
$1 j \leftarrow 0$
2 for $i \leftarrow 1$ to $m$ do
$3 \quad$ fail $[i] \leftarrow j$
while $j>0$ and $P[i] \neq P[j]$ do
$\lfloor j \leftarrow$ fail $[j]$
$j \leftarrow j+1$


## KMP - complexity of the failure function

- just as we did for KMP, we can analyze ComputeFailure by amortizing character mismatches againgst eralier character matches
- since there are at most $m$ character matches, ComputeFailure runs in $\mathcal{O}(m)$ time


## STRING MATCHING

## BOYER MOORE ALGORITHM

## Can we improve on the naïve algorithm?

$P$ : word
$T$ : There would have been a time for such a word --------word
$u$ doesn't occur in $P$, so skip next two alignments

P: word
T: There would have been a time for such a word
-------word
word skip!
word skip! word

## Boyer-Moore

Learn from character comparisons to skip pointless alignments

1. When we hit a mismatch, move $P$ along until the mismatch becomes a match
"Bad character rule"
2. When we move $P$ along, make sure characters that matched in the last alignment also match in the next alignment
"Good suffix rule"
3. Try alignments in one direction, but do character comparisons in opposite direction

For longer skips
$P$ : word
$T$ : There would have been a time for such a word


## Boyer-Moore: Bad character rule

Upon mismatch, skip alignments until (a) mismatch becomes a match, or (b) $P$ moves past mismatched character.
(c) If there was no mismatch, don't skip

Step 1:

P: C©TTTTGC
Case (a)

Step 2:
$T$ : GCTTCTGCTACCTTTTGCGCGCGCGCGGAA
P: $\quad$ сст т T TGC
Case (b)

Step 3:
T: G C T T C T G C T A C C T T T T G C G C G C G C G C G G A A
P: CCTTTTGC
Case (c)

$P:$ CCTTTTGC
(etc)

## Boyer-Moore: Bad character rule

Step 1: $\quad$ : GCTTCTGCTACCTTTTGCGCGCGCGCGGAA P: CCTTTTGC

Step 2: $\quad$ : GCTXCTGCTACCTTTXGCGCGCGCGCGGAA P: C:CTTTTGC

Step 3: T: GCTTCTGCTACCTTTTGCGCGCGCGCGGAA P: $\uparrow \uparrow \uparrow \uparrow \uparrow \uparrow \uparrow \uparrow$

Up to step 3, we skipped 8 alignments
5 characters in $T$ were never looked at

## Boyer-Moore: Good suffix rule

Let $t=$ substring matched by inner loop; skip until (a) there are no mismatches between $P$ and $t$ or (b) $P$ moves past $t$
 P: С TTACTTAC

Step 2: T: CGTGCC (TACTTACO1 T TACTTACTTACGCGAA P: CTTACTTAC

Step 3: T: CGTGCCTACTTACTTACTTACTTACGCGAA P: CTTACTTAC

## Boyer-Moore: Good suffix rule

Let $t=$ substring matched by inner loop; skip until (a) there are no mismatches between $P$ and $t$ or (b) $P$ moves past $t$


Case (a) has two subcases according to whether $t$ occurs in its entirety to the left within $P$ (as in step 1), or a prefix of $P$ matches a suffix of $t$ (as in step 2)

## Boyer-Moore: Putting it together

How to combine bad character and good suffix rules?

T: GTTATAGCTGATCGCGGCGTAGCGGCGAA
$P$ :
GTAGC G G C G
bad char says skip 2 , good suffix says skip 7

Take the maximum! (7)

## Boyer-Moore: Putting it together

Use bad character or good suffix rule, whichever skips more

Step 3: T: GTTATAGCTGAT@GCGGCGTAGCGGCGAA
P: bc: 2, gs: 7 goodsuffix
Step 4: $\quad$ : GTTATAGCTGATCGCGGCGTAGCGGCGAA
$P: \quad$ GTAGCGGCG

11 characters of $T$ we ignored -
Step 1:
T: GTTATAGCTGATCGCGGCGTAGCGGCGAA P: GTAGCGGC

Step 2: $T$ : GTTATAGCTGATCGCGGCGTAGCGGCGAA P: GTAGCGGCG

Step 3: $T$ : GTTATAGCTGATCGCGGCGTAGCGGCGAA $P: \quad$ GTAGCGGCG

Step 4: $\quad$ T: GTTATAGCTGATCGCGGCGTAGCGGCGAA $P$ : GTAGCGGCG


Skipped 15 alignments

## Boyer-Moore: Preprocessing

Pre-calculate skips for all possible mismatch scenarios!
For bad character rule and $P=$ TCGC:


## Boyer-Moore: Preprocessing

Pre-calculate skips for all possible mismatch scenarios!
For bad character rule and $P=$ TCGC:

$T: ~ A ~ A 厅 C ~ A ~ A ~ T ~ A ~ G ~ C ~$ $P$ : TCGC

This can be constructed efficiently. See Gusfield 2.2.2.

## Boyer-Moore: Good suffix rule

We learned the weak good suffix rule; there is also a strong good suffix rule


Strong good suffix rule skips more than weak, at no additional penalty
Strong rule is needed for proof of Boyer-Moore's $\mathrm{O}(n+m)$ worst-case time. Gusfield discusses proof(s) in first several sections of ch. 3

## Boyer-Moore: Worst case

Boyer-Moore, with refinements in Gusfield, is $\mathrm{O}(n+m)$ time Given $n<m$, can simplify to $\mathrm{O}(m)$

Is this better than naïve?
For naïve, worst-case \# char comparisons is $n(m-n+1)$
Boyer-Moore: $\mathrm{O}(m)$, naïve: $\mathrm{O}(n m)$

$$
\text { Reminder: }|P|=n \quad|T|=m
$$

## Boyer-Moore: Best case

What's the best case?

P: bbbb
T: aaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaa
$\square$
bbbb bbbb bbbb bbbb bbbb bbbb bbbb bbbb bbbb bbbb bbbb

Every alignment yields immediate mismatch and bad character rule skips $n$ alignments

How many character comparisons?
floor(m / n)

## Naive vs Boyer-Moore

As $m$ \& $n$ grow, \# characters comparisons grows with...

$$
\begin{array}{rl|c|c|}
\cline { 2 - 3 } & |P|=n & |T|=m & \text { Naïve matching } \\
\text { Boyer-Moore } \\
\hline \text { Worst case } & \mathrm{m} \cdot \mathrm{n} & \mathrm{~m} \\
\hline \text { Best case } & \mathrm{m} & \mathrm{~m} / \mathrm{n} \\
\hline
\end{array}
$$

## Performance comparison

Simple Python implementations of naïve and Boyer-Moore:

|  | Naïve matching |  | Boyer-Moore |  |
| :--- | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: |
|  | \# character <br> comparisons | wall clock time | \# character <br> comparisons | wall clock time |
| P: "tomorrow" <br> T: Shakespeare's <br> complete works | $5,906,125$ | 2.90 s | 785,855 | 1.54 s |

* GCGCGGTGGCTCACGCCTGTAATCCCAGCACTTTGGGAGGCCGAGGCGGG


## Boyer-Moore implementation

## http://j.mp/CG_BoyerMoore

```
def boyer_moore(p, p_bm, t):
    """ Do Boyer-Moore matching """
    i = 0
    occurrences = []
    while i < len(t) - len(p) + 1: # left to right
        shift = 1
        mismatched = False
    for j in range(len(p)-1, -1, -1): # right to left
        if p[j] != t[i+j]:
            skip_bc = p_bm.bad_character_rule(j, t[i+j])
            skip_gs = p_bm.good_suffix_rule(j)
            shift = max(shift, skip_bc, skip_gs)
            mismatched = True
            break
    if not mismatched:
            occurrences.append(i)
            skip_gs = p_bm.match_skip()
            shift = max(shift, skip_gs)
        i += shift
    return occurrences
```


## Preprocessing: Boyer-Moore



## Preprocessing: Naïve algorithm



## Preprocessing: Boyer-Moore

Preprocessing: trade one-time cost for reduced work overall via reuse

Boyer-Moore preprocesses $P$ into lookup tables that are reused
reused for each alignment of $P$ to $T_{1}$
If you later give me $T_{2}$, I reuse the tables to match $P$ to $T_{2}$
If you later give me $T_{3}$, I reuse the tables to match $P$ to $T_{3}$

Cost of preprocessing is amortized over alignments \& texts


[^0]:    A NOTE ON RABIN'S NEAREST-NEIGHBOR ALGORITHM*
    Steve FORTUNE and John HOPCROFT
    Department of Computer Science, Cornell University, Ithaca, NY, U.S.A.
    Received 20 July 1978, revised version received 21 August 1978

    Probabilistic algorithms, nearest neighbor, hashing

